

**TEI Title**

**A recommendation for off-site text encoding**

*Perry Trolard, for the TEI Consortium* Version 1.1 — September 2011



---

# 1 Introduction

TEI Tite is a constrained customization of TEI designed for use when outsourcing production of TEI documents to vendors, who use some combination of OCR and keyboarding to produce encoded text. While the canonical version of Tite is maintained by the TEI Council, a derived version is used in the AccessTEI program.

TEI Tite is meant to express a transitional format for documents, not an archival one. A project outsourcing encoding of documents using Tite should convert Tite documents created by vendors into a more suitable format for long-term preservation, such as one of the encoding levels of *Best Practices for TEI in Libraries* or a project-specific TEI customization.

While Tite includes only a limited set of all of the elements in TEI, it should not be confused with *TEI Lite*, which also contains a subset of elements. What distinguishes Tite from other TEI customizations is that Tite is meant to prescribe *exactly one* way of encoding a particular feature of a document in as many cases as possible, ensuring that any two encoders would produce the same XML document for a source document.

This document specifies how a source document should be encoded using TEI Tite. Its organizing model is roughly the structure of a TEI document itself, and it proceeds from high-level features to low, starting with general requirements, text structure, directions on when to group texts, considerations about type of text (genre and format), continuing down to instructions on marking phrase-level features, reference systems, and so forth. In its original ODD (one document does-it-all) format, this document can generate everything necessary for working in TEI Tite: both documentation (this Tite-specific prose as well as the full technical documentation for each of its elements) and schemas in either W3C Schema, RELAX NG, or XML DTD. Software utilities, including the Roma web tool, can generate these.

Tite uses a subset of the TEI's elements, except for a few shortcut elements for the convenience of use by vendors (<b>, <i>, <ul>, <sup>, <sub>, <smcap>, <colShift> and <ornament>) which can be transformed to normal TEI elements. Tite is also not a TEI-conformant customization since it breaks the TEI Abstract Model by omitting <teiHeader> for encoder convenience. That is, Tite was created primarily by *removing* elements and attributes from the TEI, and not from extensive *modification*. As a TEI customization, Tite inherits TEI semantics, and ambiguity in this specification should be resolved with reference to the TEI Guidelines. What makes Tite distinct is that where the TEI in general is famously tolerant of multiple methods of encoding a given feature, Tite seeks uniformity of encoding through constraint, via its stripped-down tag set and via this specification.

Tite can be used to encode printed prose, poetry, drama, newspapers, and anything else which can be described with the basic TEI building-blocks of divisions, paragraphs, line groups, and speeches.

In this documentation, *document* refers generally to the item (book, pamphlet, newspaper, etc.) to be encoded and *text* to either linguistic (as opposed to graphic) material or a logically distinct literary unit.

## 2 General Requirements

### 2.1 What to Capture

All printed material should be captured: all text (that is, printed characters) should be transcribed and the presence of graphical items or other non-transcribable elements should be indicated with markup.

### 2.2 End-of-line Hyphens

A distinction should be maintained in the electronic transcription between end-of-line or soft hyphens (an artifact of page layout) and hard hyphens (a linguistic feature). The former should be transcribed as the SOFT HYPHEN (U+00AD) character; the latter, as the HYPHEN-

### 3 GLOBAL TEXT STRUCTURE

---

MINUS (U+002D) character generally available on Western keyboards. In the rare case of coincidence of the two types — where a word that is normally hyphenated is split across a line break at its hyphen — the hyphen should be considered hard, and transcribed as the HYPHEN-MINUS.

#### 2.3 Character Encoding

Characters should be encoded in UTF-8. For characters not easily input from the keyboard, use hexadecimal numeric entities (e.g. é, the small latin e with acute accent, is represented as `&#x00E9;`).

#### 2.4 Accuracy and Verification

The standard for accuracy of transcription should be at least 99.99% (1 error in 10,000 characters). The sample size for verification will be 5% of the total text.

#### 2.5 Documenting the Encoding Process

Almost surely, difficult encoding situations will arise whose resolution may not be covered by this documentation or the TEI Guidelines. In such cases, it is important to document the markup choices that are made. To this end each encoded file should be accompanied by a document with such notes. These notes should reference features of a document that seem remarkable to encoders and how these were handled by encoders.

### 3 Global Text Structure

#### 3.1 TEI Tite text structure

In TEI Tite, `<text>` is the root element, containing front matter, the body of the text, and back matter.

```
<text xml:id="unique-identifier">
  <front>
  <!-- front matter -->
  </front>
  <body>
  <!-- body of text -->
  </body>
  <back>
  <!-- back matter -->
  </back>
</text>
```

The `<text>`'s *xml:id* attribute should contain a unique identifier for the document being encoded.

Tite omits the `<teiHeader>` element as a convenience to transcribers. This departs from normal TEI practice, which requires `<TEI>` as the root element, containing `<teiHeader>` and `<text>` elements. In order to bring a document encoded in TEI Tite into adherence with the TEI Abstract Model, projects should add a `teiHeader` before engaging in post-transcription processing.

#### 3.2 Groups of Texts

A document should be encoded as a group of texts only when each member of the group contains its own front or back matter (most often, a separate title page). In this case the `<group>` element should be a child of the `<text>` element, and should contain child `<text>` elements each containing a `<front>`, `<body>`, and `<back>` (each `<text>` need not have both front and back matter, but should have at least one). Note that this group of texts will still

have its own front and back matter. When dealing with a group of texts, the basic TEI text structure is modified to look like:

```

<text>
  <front>
  <!-- front matter for the group -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
      <front>
      <!-- front matter of first text -->
      </front>
      <body>
      <!-- body of first text -->
      </body>
      <back>
      <!-- back matter of first text -->
      </back>
    </text>
    <text>
      <front>
      <!-- front matter of second text -->
      </front>
      <body>
      <!-- body of second text -->
      </body>
      <back>
      <!-- back matter of second text -->
      </back>
    </text>
    <!-- more texts or groups of texts here -->
  </group>
  <back>
  <!-- back matter for the group -->
  </back>
</text>

```

In cases where a document appears to contain a group of texts but the above condition is not met, encode each unit as a (numbered) `<div>` with an appropriate *type* attribute.

### 3.3 Structural Divisions

Tite uses numbered divisions: `<div1>` through `<div7>`, which stand for levels of nesting within a text. `<div1>`'s nest inside or are contained by the `<front>`, `<body>`, and `<back>` elements, `<div2>`'s nest inside or are contained by `<div1>`'s, etc. The document's table of contents is often a good place to find cues about where structural divisions start and end; other cues can be blank pages, recurring typographical or ornamental features, or a numbering system ("Chapter 5" etc.). Also, the presence of a heading will often indicate the beginning of a division.

The *type* attribute should be used to express the type of division being marked. Where present, use a name for division type given in the document itself. Though any constrained enumerated list of *type* values will have to be determined on a job-by-job basis, some examples of appropriate division types are:

- act
- article
- book
- chapter

- essay
- letter
- part
- scene
- section
- subsection

When a heading is present, encode it with the `<head>` element. If there is more than one heading at the beginning of a given division, encode each heading with its own `<head>` element, using the *type* attribute to distinguish them. Appropriate values are:

- main
- sub (subtitle)
- alt (alternate)
- desc (descriptive)

The *n* attribute should be used to record sequential labels associated with a structural division (numbers, numerals, letters). When present, these labels should also be transcribed within the content of `<head>` element. For instance:

```
<div1 n="III" type="part">
  <head>III: It Awakes</head>
  <!-- ... -->
</div1>
```

#### 3.3.1 False Indicators

A *divisional title* is a page that resembles a half-title page: it displays the title or heading of a major structural unit on an otherwise blank page. *Divisional titles* should be encoded not with a separate `<div>` element, but as a `<head>` within the appropriate `<div>`. For *half-title pages* and similar *fly-title pages* see the section on Front Matter.

Another potential false indication of a new structural division is an *ornament* used as an informal division: a printer's ornament of some sort, a string of asterisks or periods, or a horizontal line. Mark these with the special `<ornament>` element. If the ornament is a horizontal line or printer's device or otherwise not transcribable, make the element empty and include an appropriate *type* attribute (line or ornament); if the ornament is made up of characters, transcribe the characters into the `<ornament>`'s content.

### 3.4 Front and Back Matter

Front and back matter should be encoded with the `<front>` and `<back>` elements, respectively. `<div1>` elements should contain the major sections and should be characterized by *type* attribute values. The exception, however, is the title page, which should be encoded with the `<titlePage>` element and its children. The `<titlePart>` element should have a *type* attribute with one of the following values:

- main
- sub (subtitle)
- desc (descriptive title)

- 
- alt (alternate title)
  - volume (volume information)

<titlePart type="volume"> should be used to encode volume information wherever it is found on the title page, even if it is separated from the other title information. The elements that make up the <titlePage> content model are: <graphic>, <byline>, <epigraph>, <docTitle>, <titlePart>, <docAuthor>, <docEdition>, <docImprint>, <docDate>, <figure>, <ornament>.

Information on the verso of the title page should be included as well (after a <pb>).

Common items to encode in front and back matter – and therefore common *type* attribute values for <front> and <back> divisions are:  
**front**

- acknowledgements
- advertisement
- castlist
- contents
- dedication
- fly-title
- foreword
- introduction
- preface

**back**

- appendix
- bibliography
- colophon
- glossary
- index

*Half-title* and *fly-title* pages may be encountered in the front matter. A *half-title* page precedes the title page proper and sometimes includes volume or series information; a *fly-title* page comes at the very end of the front matter, just before the body. In the case of half-titles, encode these as <div1 type="half-title"> (with <titlePart> elements inside <docTitle> elements as appropriate); in the case of fly-titles, encode them likewise with <div1 type="fly-title">, making sure to make the fly-title division the last part of the front matter (and not the first part of the body, as may seem reasonable as well).

## 4 Types of Text

Tite is equipped to support basic encoding of several types of text: in terms of genre, it supports prose, verse, and drama, and in terms of format, it supports books, newspapers, pamphlets, and other similar printed material. Tite has special elements for letters, verse, drama, and newspapers.

### 4.1 Letters

<opener> and <closer> are elements designed to encode the beginning and ending sections of letters, prefaces, diary entries, or other personal types of writing. Both elements contain:

- <dateline>: for recording time and place of composition; use <date> with *when* value (in W3C format as in the TEI Guidelines) to record date information
- <signed>: for recording a signature
- <salute>: for recording salutation at the beginning ("Dear Roger,") or end ("Yours truly,")

<opener> contains the additional elements <epigraph>, <argument>, and <byline>. <epigraph> will often be useful in the context of a letter. When encoding an epigraph, make sure to encode the content as you would any other feature, marking line groups, bibliographical elements, etc.

<argument> and <byline>, however, are not intended specifically for use with letters:

- <argument>: for a summary that precedes a division
- <byline>: for a statement of responsibility for the document

### 4.2 Verse

All verse should be encoded within at least one <lg> element, even when there are no distinct stanzas or when the verse is interspersed with prose. If it is known, use the *type* attribute to express the type of line group. Sometimes within a poem there is a question about what should be tagged as a <lg> or as a separate <div>. As a rough rule of thumb, if there is a title accompanying the division, use the <div> element; otherwise, use <lg>.

Each line of verse should be encoded with the <l> element, and care should be taken to distinguish these logical lines of verse from lines motivated by page layout. The latter should be encoded as <lb>s. Thus

AS virtuous men pass mildly away, And whisper to their souls to go, Whilst some of their sad

should be encoded as

```
<lg type="stanza">
  <l>AS virtuous men pass mildly away,</l>
  <l rend="indent(1)">And whisper to their souls to<lb/> go,</l>
  <l>Whilst some of their sad friends<lb/> do say,</l>
  <l rend="indent(1)">"Now his breath goes," and<lb/> some say, "No."</l>
</lg>
```

Also, as in the example above, use the *rend* attribute to mark when a line is indented more than its siblings. Use numbered indent values (e.g. indent(1), indent(2), etc.) to make clear levels of indentation.

### 4.3 Drama

The standard TEI elements for drama should be used: <sp>, <stage>, <speaker>. If the *who* attribute is used on <sp>, also transcribe who is given as the speaker, in whatever form it is written, in the <speaker> element. Short pieces of stage direction that accompany the speaker designation may be included in the <speaker> element.

Scenes and acts should be encoded as appropriately nested <div> elements with *type* attributes of scene or act, respectively. Cast lists can likewise be encoded using <div> and *type="castlist"*.

Prologues and epilogues can be treated as <sp>s of their own, unless their structure would be better represented by nested <div> elements.

## 4.4 Newspapers

Tite includes the elements `<colShift>` and `<cb>` which are well suited for the multi-column layout of newspapers. Additional relevant elements are: `<ref>`, to encode a pointer to the continuation of a story in a different column or on a different page; and `<figure>`, to describe illustrations, advertisements, and cartoons.

## 5 Block-level Features

### 5.1 Block Quotations

Use the `<q>` element to encode block quotations. A block quotation is indicated by its being set off from surrounding text either with extra line-spacing or margins or with a different typeface. If the quotation is of an entire text, use the `<floatingText>` element and its children inside the `<q>` element:

```
<div1 type="intro">
  <p>
<!-- ... -->
  </p>
  <q>
    <floatingText>
      <body>
        <lg type="poem">
<!-- poem -->
        </lg>
      </body>
    </floatingText>
  </q>
  <p>
<!-- ... -->
  </p>
</div1>
```

If present, transcribe all quotation marks or other delimiters inside the `<q>` element.

### 5.2 Figures

Use the `<figure>` element to encode figures. If a figure has a heading or caption, encode it with the `<head>` element. If there is associated text, simply use a `<p>` to encode it.

### 5.3 Tables and Lists

Tables and lists are encoded as in the TEI Guidelines, but note the following.

If a cell in a table is a heading or a label, set the *role* attribute to label; if the cell contains data, there is no need to use *role*: data is the default. If a cell or row spans more than one column or row, use the *rows* or *cols* attributes set to the number of columns or rows that it spans.

If unsure about whether a structure is best encoded as a list or table, record it as a table only if it would not be properly understood without tabular layout.

Lists should be encoded as either sequences of `<items>` or `<label>`-`<item>` pairs. When items in the list contain a label, as in a gloss list, be sure to use the latter form.

### 5.4 Notes

Both the reference to the note in the running text and the note itself must be encoded. Use `<ptr>` or `<ref>` to encode the reference. If there is no reference in the text (often the case for marginal notes), supply a `<ptr>` element in a reasonable place in the text running beside the note. If there is a reference (number, symbol, etc.), use the `<ref>` element and include the

reference text as the content. In both cases, a *target* attribute must be supplied which contains the *xml:id* value of the associated <note>.

When encoding the note itself with the <note> element, the *xml:id* and *place* attributes must be supplied. See the TEI documentation for acceptable values for *place*; the most common will be foot, end, margin-left (-right, -top, -bot).

Transcribe the note directly after it is referenced in the document. In the case of notes without explicit reference (pointed to with <ptr>), set the *anchored* attribute to false.

### 5.5 divWrapper Elements

Elements that can appear at the beginning and end of structural divisions, such as <argument>, <epigraph>, and <opener>, are called divWrapper elements in the TEI class system. An *argument* is a summary of what is to come; be sure to distinguish this from a *heading*, which is a *title* for the division. If an epigraph comes with bibliographic or simple citation material, encode this as well. For example:

```
<epigraph>
  <cit>
    <q>"I have sworn upon the altar of God eternal hostility against every form of
    tyranny over
      the mind of man."</q>
    <bibl>
      <author>Thomas Jefferson.</author>
    </bibl>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```

### 5.6 Uncertain Blocks

In rare cases where the logical identity of a block-level element is hard to discern, use the TEI element <ab> (anonymous block) instead of applying a <p> or <div> element. In these cases, be sure to document this decision in accompanying notes. *Applying this element should be viewed as a last resort.*

The <gap> element should be used when for some reason the document being transcribed contains illegible text (smudged, torn, missing, etc.) or something outside the scope of transcription for a given project: characters in an unsupported character set, for instance. <gap> indicates that something is omitted. When using <gap>, set the *reason* attribute to an appropriate value. (See <unclear> below.)

## 6 Phrase-level Features

### 6.1 Typographical Changes

There are six elements in Tite that capture specific typographical features:

for bold-face glyphs

for italicized glyphs

for underlined glyphs

for glyphs in small-caps

for glyphs in subscript

for glyphs in superscript

These mark the physical change, and are agnostic about a logical motivation for it. There are two exceptions to this approach, however: marking foreign words and titles. In the case of foreign words, use the `<foreign>` element; in the case of titles, use the `<title>` element only if certain that the word or phrase in question is a title. If a phrase is, say, italicized, but you are uncertain about its being a title, use the `<i>` element instead. Foreign words should be marked only if they are typographically distinguished from surrounding text.

In addition, the `<handshift>` element may be used within the body of a transcription to indicate where a change of hand is detected for whatever reason.

If there is a typographical feature not covered by the above elements, the TEI `<hi>` element is still available in Tite. Use it without a *rend* attribute.

## 6.2 Phrase-level Quotation

For passages set off by quotation marks or another delimiter, use the `<q>` element, including the delimiter inside the tag.

## 6.3 Alignment and Indentation

If the alignment of an element seems remarkable, set the element's *rend* attribute to an appropriate value (normally center, right, left, etc.). However, when semantic already accounts for its cause, description of alignment is not necessary. Headings, for instance, do not need to be marked as being centered.

To indicate level of indentation (often in verse), use numerical arguments to indent, as in `indent(1)`, `indent(-1)`, and so on.

## 6.4 Uncertain Segments

The `<seg>` element is the phrase-level analogue to the `<ab>` element. If a phrase-level feature seems to be present but its identity is hard to fathom, use this element. This, again, is a last resort.

Alternately, when a passage of text is for some reason too hard to read, use the `<unclear>` element, setting the *reason* attribute to an appropriate value. When using `<unclear>`, surround the entire word with the tag if any part of it is unclear (not just the illegible letter, say).

## 6.5 Unknown Glyphs

For cases in which it is unknown which character a given glyph corresponds to, mark the glyph with the `<g>` element to indicate the uncertainty. By convention in Tite, `<g>` represents any unknown glyph; no *ref* attribute is necessary. Note that unknown glyphs are different from *illegible* text.

## 7 Reference Systems

Encode page breaks (`<pb>`) at the *start* of each page, and encode breaks even for blank pages. If the page is numbered, include the page number as the value of the *n* attribute and, again, no matter where the page number is printed on the page, place the `<pb>` element at the top.

If marking column breaks, follow the same rules as for page breaks. Column breaks are imagined to appear at the *top* of the column, at the beginning of the column's text. The `<colShift>` element exists to record a change in columnar layout. If such a change occurs, mark the beginning of the new layout with `<colShift>` and supply the new number of columns as the value for the *n* attribute.

For many applications, it will not be important to capture line breaks in ordinary prose text, but in cases where they are purposeful (such as the layout of acrostics, or where a word is broken across a line), they should be captured using the `<lb>` element, placing it at the start of each line.



---

## Appendices

### A TEI Tite and the *Best Practices for TEI in Libraries*

The *Best Practices for TEI in Libraries* ("BP") creates common definitions of levels of encoding based on depth of markup applied. Because the levels of encoding provide a tremendously useful common set of terms, it's helpful to situate TEI Tite according to them.

Mapped to BP levels, TEI Tite would sit between Level 3 and Level 4: it requires use of all the elements from Level 3 plus additional ones, but requires fewer elements than Level 4. Relative to Level 3, Simple Analysis, Tite

- encourages the use of the *rend* attribute on typographically distinct text (marked with `<hi>`), implicitly, through the provision of convenience elements (`<i>`, `<b>`, etc.), and it provides the `<title>` and `<foreign>` elements for semantic markup of typographically distinct phrases; in level 3, the *rend* attribute is optional, and `<title>` and `<foreign>` are not provided
- provides some genre-specific elements in addition to those for verse that level three also provides (`<lg>`, `<l>`): `<sp>`, `<speaker>`, and `<stage>` for drama, the `<colShift>` element especially for newspapers.

The most useful comparison for Tite is to Level 4 (Basic Content Analysis), provides the most useful comparison. The following items represent instances where Tite is *less* ambitious than Level 4:

- except in the case of the `<foreign>` and `<title>` elements, it is preferred in Tite to describe typographical changes physically, rather than semantically; Tite uses `<i>`, `<b>`, etc. where level four uses `<emph>`, `<gloss>`, `<term>`
- Tite provides only `<q>` for quoted material, where level four is more discriminating, using `<quote>`, `<said>`, `<mentioned>`, `<soCalled>`
- Tite doesn't provide elements for editorial intervention, as level four does: `<choice>`, `<sic>`, `<corr>`
- Tite doesn't provide entity-specific naming elements, like `<persName>`, `<placeName>`, `<orgName>` and their list- (`<listPerson>`, etc.) forms

Bringing Tite-encoded documents up to BP Level 4 would simply require application of additional markup, not significant reworking of markup, and in that way Tite is compatible with the BP.

Do also keep in mind that Tite lacks both the `<teiHeader>` and root `<TEI>` element used in TEI-conformant documents.

## B Formal specification

### B.1 Elements

---

**<ab>** (anonymous block) contains any component-level unit of text, acting as a container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the same constraints as, a paragraph. [17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors]

*Module linking*

*Member of* macro.abContent model.pLike

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q sp stage

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* argument back body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph front  
postscript

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift  
character data

*Note* The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined. Unlike paragraphs, <ab> may nest and may use the *type* and *subtype* attributes.

*Example*

```
<div type="book" n="Genesis">
  <div type="chapter" n="1">
    <ab>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</ab>
    <ab>And the earth was without form, and void; and
      darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the
      spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</ab>
    <ab>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</ab>
  <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</div>
```

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:l//tei:ab">

```
<sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:floatingText | parent::tei:figure | parent::tei:note">
```

Abstract model violation: Metrical lines may not contain higher-level divisions such as p or ab, unless ab is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText.

```
</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.abContent"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration* `element ab { macro.abContent }`

---

**<abbr>** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
- @xml:id
- @n

- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy

Member of model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift  
character data

Note If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the  
<editorialDecl>, either with a <normalization> element or a <p>.

*Example*

```
<choice>
  <expand>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expand>
  <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>
```

*Example*

```
<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expand>senatus populusque romanorum</expand>
</choice>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element abbr { att.global.attributes, att.cmc.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

---

**<add>** (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend

- \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
- \* *@cert*
- \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
- \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.transcriptional
  - *@status*
  - *@cause*
  - *@seq*
  - att.written
    - \* *@hand*
- att.typed
  - *@type*

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del editor email foreign head hi item l label lg  
name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift  
character data

*Note* In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element are recommended.

In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

*Example*

The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences **<add place="above">**of these facts**</add>** from which this tale takes its title.

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element add
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

---

**<addrLine>** (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility

- \* @cert
- \* @resp
- att.global.source
- \* @source

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain

core: abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift

character data

*Note* Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the `model.addrPart` class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an `<address>` element directly but may be wrapped within an `<addrLine>` if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

*Example*

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

*Example*

```
<addrLine>
  <ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref>
</addrLine>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

---

**<address>** (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.cmc
    - @generatedBy

**@type** characterizes the address in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **billing** the address to which a bill for goods or services should be sent.

**delivery** the address to which packages should be sent via a private delivery service.

**mailing** the address to which mail should be sent via a public postal service.

**military** the address to which mail to deployed military personnel should be sent.

**physical** the address of a building irrespective of where mail to its occupants should be sent (for example, for the fire department).

**@role** specifies further information about the purpose of the address.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

*Sample values include:* **sender** the address of the sender of a piece of correspondence.

**return** the address to which undeliverable mail should be returned.

**recipient** the address of the intended recipient of a piece of correspondence.

**work** the address to which work-related mail should be sent, typically that of the recipient’s employer.

**home** the address to which non-work-related mail should be sent, typically the domicile of the recipient.

**start** the address of the beginning of a route, for example of a race.

**finish** the address of the end of a route, for example of a race.

**pickup** the address at which a person or package is picked up, for example by a taxi or delivery service.

**dropOff** the address at which a person or package is dropped off, for example by a taxi or delivery service.

*Note* Whereas *type* is used to differentiate the kind of address (e.g. a street address vs. a post office box, or a physical address vs. a mailing address), *role* is used to differentiate the purpose of the address, for example within a correspondence ecosystem (e.g. the address of the sender vs. that of the intended recipient, or a college student’s permanent address vs. address while at school).

*Member of* model.addressLike model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l label lg list name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure table

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* back body byline closer dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint front group opener postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* addrLine cb gap lb milestone name note pb

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure

*Note* This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

*Example* Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:

```
<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <name>Bologna</name>
```

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

```
<name>Italy</name>
</address>
```

*Example* When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <name>:

```
<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <settlement>Bologna</settlement>
  <country>Italy</country>
</address>
```

*Example*

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
  <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

*Example*

```
<address>
  <country key="FR"/>
  <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
  <postCode>69002</postCode>
  <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district>
  <district type="quartier">Perrache</district>
  <street>
    <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun</street>
</address>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element address
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "billing" | "delivery" | "mailing" | "military" | "physical"
  }?,
  attribute role { list { + } }?,
}
```

```
( model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart, model.global* )+ ) )
}
```

---

**<argument>** (argument) contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener titlePage

*May contain*

*core:* bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift ornament

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* floatingText

*Example*

```
<argument>
  <p>Monte Video – Maldonado – Excursion
    to R Polanco – Lazo and Bolas – Partridges –
    Absence of Trees – Deer – Capybara, or River Hog –
    Tucutuco – Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits – Tyrant
    Flycatcher – Mocking-bird – Carrion Hawks –
    Tubes formed by Lightning – House struck</p>
</argument>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element argument
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  ( ( model.global | model.headLike )*, ( ( model.common, model.global* )+ ) )
}
```

---

**<author>** (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change

- att.global.facs
  - \* *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - \* *@corresp*
  - \* *@synch*
  - \* *@sameAs*
  - \* *@copyOf*
  - \* *@next*
  - \* *@prev*
  - \* *@exclude*
  - \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.dataable
  - att.dataable.w3c
    - \* *@when*
    - \* *@from*
    - \* *@to*

*Member of* model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Note* Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.

In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.

Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

*Example*

```
<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de
(1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author>
  <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName>
  and
  <persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
  <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting
  Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network
</author>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element author
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

---

**<b>** (bold) for capturing typographical feature: bold glyphs.

*Namespace* <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/tite/1.0>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_tite

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next

- \* @prev
- \* @exclude
- \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source

*Member of* model.hiLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell formula

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift  
character data

*Content model*

```
<content>  
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element b { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

---

**<back>** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.  
[4.7. Back Matter 4. Default Text Structure]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
  - @xml:id

- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source

*Contented by structure:* floatingText text

*May contain*

*core:* address cb gap head lb list listBibl milestone note p pb

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div1 docAuthor docDate docEdition  
docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

*Note* Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter and which as front matter, the content models for the <back> and <front> elements are identical.

*Example*

```
<back>
  <div type="appendix">
    <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
    <p>T0 shew the Depravity of human Nature, and how apt the Mind is to be
misled by Trinkets
      and false Appearances, Mrs. Two-Shoes does acknowledge, that after
she became rich, she
      had like to have been, too fond of Money
<!-- .... -->
  </p>
```

```
</div>
<!-- ... -->
<div type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if
you please;

<!-- ... -->
  </p>
</div>
<div type="advert">
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these
and are sold at Mr
  Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
    <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
  <!-- ... -->
    <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers
of all Nations,
    10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
</div>
<div type="advert">
  <head>By the KING's Royal Patent, Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the Bible
and Sun in St.
  Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles,
Colds, &c. 2s.
    6d</item>
    <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
  <!-- ... -->
  </list>
</div>
</back>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
      <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="0">
      <sequence>
        <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
        <alternate minOccurs="0"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
          <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
          <classRef key="model.global"/>
        </alternate>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
</content>
```

```

<alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

### Schema Declaration

```

element back
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.pLike | model.list
    )
    (
      (
        model.divLike,
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
      )
      | ( model.divLike, ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )* )
    )?,
    ( ( model.divBottomPart, ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
  )
}

```

---

**<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking

- \* *@corresp*
- \* *@synch*
- \* *@sameAs*
- \* *@copyOf*
- \* *@next*
- \* *@prev*
- \* *@exclude*
- \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.declarable
  - *@default*
- att.docStatus
  - *@status*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*

Member of model.biblLike model.biblPart

Contained by

*core:* add bibl cit del desc head hi item l listBibl note p q ref stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

*core:* abbr add address author bibl cb date del editor email foreign gap hi lb milestone  
name note num pb ptr pubPlace publisher q ref respStmt time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*transcr:* handShift  
character data

*Note* Contains *phrase-level* elements, together with any combination of elements from the model.biblPart class

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

### Example

```
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in  
English (Yale,  
1990)</bibl>
```

### Example

```
<bibl>  
<title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the  
Wood</title>. In  
<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.  
<publisher>OUP</publisher>  
<date>1968</date>.  
</bibl>
```

### Example

```
<bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter"  
xml:id="carlin_2003">  
<author>  
<name>  
<surname>Carlin</surname>  
(<forename>Claire</forename>)</name>  
</author>,  
<title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last  
congrès</title> dans  
<bibl type="monogr">  
<title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.  
Tobin</title>, éd.  
<editor>  
<name>  
<forename>Claire</forename>  
<surname>Carlin</surname>  
</name>  
</editor> et  
<editor>  
<name>  
<forename>Kathleen</forename>  
<surname>Wine</surname>  
</name>  
</editor>,  
<pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>,  
<publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>,  
<date when="2003">2003</date>.  
</bibl>  
</bibl>
```

*Schematron* <sch:pattern is-a="declarable">

```
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:bibl"/> </sch:pattern>
```

### Content model

```
<content>  
<alternate minOccurs="0"  
maxOccurs="unbounded">  
<textNode/>  
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>  
<classRef key="model.highlighted"/>  
<classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>  
<classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>  
<classRef key="model.segLike"/>  
<classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>  
<classRef key="model.biblPart"/>
```

```
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element bibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.highlighted      | model.pPart.data      | model.pPart.edit
  )
}
```

---

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

\* @source

*Content model structure:* floatingText text

*May contain*

*core:* address bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift ornament

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div1 docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

*Example*

```
<body>
  <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>
  <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>
  <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l>
  <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
  <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
  <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
  <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l>
  <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
  <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
  <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer>
</body>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
        <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <alternate>
      <sequence minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
        <alternate minOccurs="0"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
            <classRef key="model.global"/>
            <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
          </alternate>
        </sequence>
      <sequence minOccurs="1"
```

```
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
<alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
<sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
<alternate minOccurs="0">
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
  </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
  </alternate>
  </sequence>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element body
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( ( model.divTop, ( model.global | model.divTop )* )? ),
    ( ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )? ),
    (
      ( ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ )
      | ( ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ )
      | (
```

```

        ( ( ( schemaSpec | model.common ), model.global* )+ ),
        (
            ( ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ )
            | ( ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ )
        )?
    )
),
( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
)
}

```

---

**<byline>** (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.5. Front Matter]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* • att.global

- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source

- att.cmc

- @generatedBy

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body closer div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener  
titlePage

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address cb date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note  
num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* docAuthor

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Note* The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

*Example*

```
<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the  
while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>
```

*Example*

```
<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>
```

*Example*

```
<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>
```

*Example*

```
<byline>BY  
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>  
Master of Arts,  
(Sontimes)  
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>  
  <alternate minOccurs="0"  
    maxOccurs="unbounded">  
    <textNode/>  
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>  
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>  
    <elementRef key="docAuthor"/>  
    <classRef key="model.global"/>  
  </alternate>  
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element byline  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.cmc.attributes,  
}
```

```
( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global )*
}
```

---

**<cb>** (column beginning) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.cmc
    - @generatedBy
  - att.typed
    - @type

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl cit date del editor email foreign head hi  
item l label lg list listBibl name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp sp speaker  
stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure table

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6  
div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front  
group opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Note On this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column beginnings relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

Example Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

```
<pb/>
<cb n="1"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
  <sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
    sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
    or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
<sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<!-- remainder of column -->
<cb n="2"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
    containing five Chaldron</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>
  <form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
    Sea-Fishes</sense>.
</entryFree>
```

Content model 

<content> <empty/></content>
------------------------------

Schema Declaration

```
element cb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  empty
}
```

<cell> (cell) contains one cell of a table. [15.1.1. TEI Tables]

Module figures

- Attributes
- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change

- \* *@change*
- att.global.facs
  - \* *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - \* *@corresp*
  - \* *@synch*
  - \* *@sameAs*
  - \* *@copyOf*
  - \* *@next*
  - \* *@prev*
  - \* *@exclude*
  - \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.tableDecoration
  - *@role*
  - *@rows*
  - *@cols*

*Containing figures:* row

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num p pb ptr q ref sp stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Example*

```
<row>
  <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
  <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
    and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element cell
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

**<cit>** (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 10.3.5.1. Examples]

*Module core*

*Member of* model.quoteLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author cit del desc editor email foreign head hi item l label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref sp speaker stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition epigraph postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* bibl cb cit gap graphic lb listBibl milestone note pb ptr q ref

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure formula

*textstructure:* floatingText

*Example*

```
<cit>
  <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
  insupportable smell,
  as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
  <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>

```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>horrifier</orth>
  </form>
  <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
    <quote>to horrify</quote>
  </cit>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
    <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
      <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
    </cit>
  </cit>
</entry>

```

### Example

```
<cit type="example">
  <quote xml:lang="mix">Ka'an yu tsa'a Pedro.</quote>
  <media url="soundfiles-gen:S_speak_1s_on_behalf_of_Pedro_01_02_03_TS.wav"
    mimeType="audio/wav"/>
  <cit type="translation">
    <quote xml:lang="en">I'm speaking on behalf of Pedro.</quote>
  </cit>
  <cit type="translation">
    <quote xml:lang="es">Estoy hablando de parte de Pedro.</quote>
  </cit>
</cit>
```

### Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.egLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.entryPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
    <elementRef key="pc"/>
    <elementRef key="q"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```
element cit
{
  (
    model.biblLike | model.egLike | model.entryPart | model.global | model.
  )
}
```

---

**<closer>** (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, bylines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes • att.global

- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking

- \* @corresp
- \* @synch
- \* @sameAs
- \* @copyOf
- \* @next
- \* @prev
- \* @exclude
- \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.written
  - @hand

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group postscript

May contain

core: abbr add address cb date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note  
num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: byline dateline salute signed

transcr: handShift

character data

Example

```
<div type="letter">
  <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
  </closer>
</div>
```

Example

```

<div type="chapter">
  <p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914-1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>

```

*Content model*

```

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="byline"/>
    <elementRef key="signed"/>
    <elementRef key="dateline"/>
    <elementRef key="salute"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

*Schema Declaration*

```

element closer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike    | byline    | signed    | dateline    | salute    | model.phrase
  )
}

```

---

**<colShift>** (column shift) with the *cols* attribute is used to mark where a document changes columnar layout.

*Namespace* <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/tite/1.0>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_tite

*Attributes* • att.global

– @xml:id

– @n

– @xml:lang

– @xml:space

– att.global.change

\* @change

– att.global.facs

\* @facs

- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source

**@ed** indicates the edition or version in which the change in columnar layout is located at this point

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.word

**@cols** indicates the new number of columns

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.count

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl cit date del editor email foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp sp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure table

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain* Empty element

*Content model*

<content> <empty/></content>
------------------------------

*Schema Declaration*

<pre>element colShift {   att.global.attributes,   attribute [http://www.tei-c.org/ns/tite/1.0]ed { text }?,   attribute [http://www.tei-c.org/ns/tite/1.0]cols { text }?,   empty }</pre>
--

**<date>** (date) contains a date in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 16.2.3. The Setting Description 14.4. Dates]

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.datable
    - att.datable.w3c
      - \* @when
      - \* @from
      - \* @to
  - att.typed
    - @type
  - att.calendarSystem
    - @calendar
  - att.cmc
    - @generatedBy

*Member of* model.dateLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address cb date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note  
num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*transcr:* handShift  
character data

*Example*

```
<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>
```

*Example*

```
Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day  
of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven  
of the Republic  
the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

*Example*

```
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>  
  <alternate minOccurs="0"  
    maxOccurs="unbounded">  
    <textNode/>  
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>  
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>  
    <classRef key="model.global"/>  
  </alternate>  
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element date  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.dateable.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
  att.calendarSystem.attributes,  
  att.cmc.attributes,  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *  
}
```

**<dateline>** (dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.cmc
    - @generatedBy
  - att.written
    - @hand

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body closer div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address cb date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* docDate

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Example*

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

*Example*

```
<div type="chapter">
  <p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914-1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <elementRef key="docDate"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element dateline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global | docDate )*
}
```

---

**<del>** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space

- att.global.change
  - \* *@change*
- att.global.facs
  - \* *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - \* *@corresp*
  - \* *@synch*
  - \* *@sameAs*
  - \* *@copyOf*
  - \* *@next*
  - \* *@prev*
  - \* *@exclude*
  - \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.transcriptional
  - *@status*
  - *@cause*
  - *@seq*
  - att.written
    - \* *@hand*
- att.typed
  - *@type*

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del editor email foreign head hi item l label lg  
name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Note* This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The **<delSpan>** element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.

The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a **<supplied>** tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the **<gap>** tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the **<gap>** element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the **<unclear>** element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.

Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the **<certainty>** element (see 22. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).

There is a clear distinction in the TEI between **<del>** and **<surplus>** on the one hand and **<gap>** or **<unclear>** on the other. **<del>** indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. **<surplus>** indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. **<gap>** or **<unclear>**, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 12.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 12.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

*Example*

```
<l>
  <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
  <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
  weht der Wind
</l>
```

*Example*

```
<del rend="overstrike">
  <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"
    unit="character"/>
</del>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element del
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

---

**<desc>** (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented. [23.4.1. Description of Components]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.change
    - \* *@change*
  - att.global.facs
    - \* *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - \* *@corresp*
    - \* *@synch*
    - \* *@sameAs*
    - \* *@copyOf*
    - \* *@next*
    - \* *@prev*
    - \* *@exclude*
    - \* *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* *@rend*
    - \* *@style*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* *@cert*
    - \* *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

**@type** characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **deprecationInfo** (deprecation information)

This element describes why or how its parent element is being deprecated, typically including recommendations for alternate encoding.

```
<dataSpec module="tei"
  ident="teidata.point"
  validUntil="2050-02-25">
  <desc type="deprecationInfo"
    versionDate="2018-09-14"
    xml:lang="en">Several standards bodies, including NIST in
the USA,
    strongly recommend against ending the representation of a
number
    with a decimal point. So instead of <q>3.</q> use either
<q>3</q>
    or <q>3.0</q>.</desc>
<!-- ... -->
</dataSpec>
```

*Member of* model.descLike model.labelLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add del desc gap graphic head hi item l lg list listBibl note p q ref stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address bibl cit date desc email foreign hi label list listBibl name num ptr q  
ref stage time title

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* table

*textstructure:* floatingText

character data

*Note* When used in a specification element such as **<elementSpec>**, TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.

*Example* Example of a **<desc>** element inside a documentation element.

```
<dataSpec module="tei"
  ident="teidata.point">
  <desc versionDate="2010-10-17"
    xml:lang="en">defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian
space.</desc>
  <content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="( -?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?, -?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)? )"/>
  </content>
<!-- ... -->
</dataSpec>
```

*Example* Example of a **<desc>** element in a non-documentation element.

```
<place xml:id="KERG2">
  <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</placeName>
```

```

<!-- ... -->
<terrain>
  <desc>antarctic tundra</desc>
</terrain>
<!-- ... -->
</place>

```

*Schematron* A <desc> with a *type* of deprecationInfo should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <desc> is a valid child of that element.

```

<sch:rule context="tei:desc[ @type eq 'deprecationInfo']">
<sch:assert test="./@validUntil">Information about a deprecation should only be
present in a specification element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element
that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child <desc
type="deprecationInfo">.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

```

*Content model*

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>

```

*Schema Declaration*

```

element desc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  attribute type { "deprecationInfo" }?,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

---

**<div1>** (level-1 text division) contains a first-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next

- \* @prev
- \* @exclude
- \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.typed
  - @type

Member of model.div1Like

Contained by

textstructure: back body front

May contain

core: address bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

derived-module-tei\_tite: colShift ornament

figures: figure table

linking: ab

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div2 docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

Note any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

Example

```

<div1 xml:id="levi" n="I" type="part">
  <head>Part I: Of Man </head>
  <div2 xml:id="levi1" n="1" type="chapter">
    <head>Chap. I. Of Sense </head>
    <p>Concerning the Thoughts of man... </p>
  </div2>
</div1>
<div1 xml:id="levii" n="II" type="part">
  <head>Part II: Of Common-Wealth</head>
</div1>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <alternate>
        <sequence minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <alternate>

```

```

    <classRef key="model.div2Like"/>
    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
<sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <alternate minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.div2Like"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

### *Schema Declaration*

```

element div1
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( ( model.div2Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
        | (
            ( ( ( schemaSpec | model.common ), model.global* )+ ),
            ( ( ( model.div2Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )* )
          )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
    )?
  )
}

```

<div2> (level-2 text division) contains a second-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.typed
    - @type

*Member of* model.div2Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* div1

*May contain*

*core:* address bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift ornament

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div3 docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

### Example

```

<div1 n="2" type="part">
  <head>The Second Partition:
  The Cure of Melancholy</head>
  <div2 n="2.1" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.1.1" type="member">
      <div4 n="2.1.1.1" type="subsection">
        <head>Unlawful Cures rejected.</head>
        <p>Inveterate melancholy, howsoever it may seem to
          be a continue, inexorable disease, hard to be
          cured, accompanying them to their graves most part
          (as <ref target="#a">Montanus</ref> observes), yet many
          times it may be helped...
        </p>
      </div4>
    </div3>
  </div2>
  <div2 n="2.2" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
      <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
      <p/>
    </div3>
  </div2>
  <div2 n="2.3" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.3.1" type="member">
      <head>Sect. III. Memb. I</head>
      <p/>
    </div3>
  </div2>
</div1>

```

### Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <alternate>
        <sequence minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <alternate>
            <classRef key="model.div3Like"/>
            <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
          </alternate>
          <classRef key="model.global"
            minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </sequence>
      <sequence>
        <sequence minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <alternate minOccurs="1"
            maxOccurs="1">
            <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
            <classRef key="model.common"/>
          </alternate>
          <classRef key="model.global"
            minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </sequence>
      </sequence>
    </sequence>
  </content>

```

```
<sequence minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.div3Like"/>
    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element div2
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( ( model.div3Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
        | (
            ( ( ( schemaSpec | model.common ), model.global* )+ ),
            ( ( ( model.div3Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )* )
          )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
    )?
  )
}
```

<div3> (level-3 text division) contains a third-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs

- \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.typed
  - @type

*Member of* model.div3Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* div2

*May contain*

*core:* address bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift ornament

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div4 docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

*Example*

```
<div2 n="2.2" type="section">
  <div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
    <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
  <div3 n="2.2.2" type="member">
    <head>Memb. II Retention and Evacuation rectified.</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
  <div3 n="2.2.3" type="member">
    <head>Memb. III Ayr rectified. With a digression of the Ayr.</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
</div2>
```

*Content model*

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <alternate>
        <sequence minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <alternate>
            <classRef key="model.div4Like"/>
            <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
          </alternate>
          <classRef key="model.global"
            minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </sequence>
      </sequence>
      <sequence>
        <sequence minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <alternate minOccurs="1"
            maxOccurs="1">
            <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
            <classRef key="model.common"/>
          </alternate>
          <classRef key="model.global"
            minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </sequence>
      </sequence>
      <sequence minOccurs="0"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <alternate>
          <classRef key="model.div4Like"/>
          <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
        </alternate>
        <classRef key="model.global"
          minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

*Schema Declaration*

```

element div3
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (

```

```

        (
          ( ( ( model.div4Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
          | (
              ( ( ( schemaSpec | model.common ), model.global* )+ ),
              ( ( ( model.div4Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
            )
          ),
        ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
      )?
    )
  }

```

---

**<div4>** (level-4 text division) contains a fourth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source
- att.typed
  - @type

*Member of* model.div4Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* div3

*May contain*

*core:* address bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift ornament

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div5 docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

*Example*

```
<div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
  <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
  <div4 n="2.2.1.1" type="subsection">
    <head>Subsect I. – Dyet rectified in substance.</head>
    <p>Diet, <term xml:lang="grc">diaitotiku</term>,
  <term xml:lang="la">victus</term> or
    living </p>
  </div4>
  <div4 n="2.2.2.1" type="subsection">
    <head>Subsect II. – Dyet rectified in quantity.</head>
    <p>Man alone, saith Cardan, eates and drinks without appetite, and useth
all his pleasures
    without necessity </p>
  </div4>
</div3>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <alternate>
        <sequence minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <alternate>
            <classRef key="model.div5Like"/>
            <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
          </alternate>
          <classRef key="model.global"
            minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </sequence>
      <sequence>
        <sequence minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <alternate minOccurs="1"
            maxOccurs="1">
            <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
            <classRef key="model.common"/>
          </alternate>
          <classRef key="model.global"
            minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </sequence>
      </sequence>
    </sequence>
```

```

<sequence minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.div5Like"/>
    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

### Schema Declaration

```

element div4
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( ( model.div5Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
        | (
            ( ( ( schemaSpec | model.common ), model.global* )+ ),
            ( ( ( model.div5Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )* )
          )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
    )?
  )
}

```

---

**<div5>** (level-5 text division) contains a fifth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes*

- att.global
- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs

- \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.typed
  - @type

Member of model.div5Like

Contained by

textstructure: div4

May contain

core: address bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

derived-module-tei\_tite: colShift ornament

figures: figure table

linking: ab

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div6 docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

Note any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

Example

```
<div2 type="chapter">
  <head>Recipes</head>
  <head>Chapter VI.</head>
  <div3>
    <head>Fruit and vegetable soups</head>
    <p>...</p>
    <div4>
      <head>Stocks for all kinds of soups</head>
      <div5 type="recipe">
        <head>Rich strong stock</head>
      <!-- ... -->
    </div5>
    <div5 type="recipe">
      <head>Medium Stock</head>
```

```

<!-- ... -->
  </div5>
</div4>
<div4 type="recipe">
  <head>Apple soup</head>
  <div5>
    <head>Ingredients</head>
    <list>
      <item>2 lbs. of good boiling apples,</item>
      <item>3/4 teaspoonful of white pepper,</item>
      <item>6 cloves,</item>
      <item>cayenne or ginger to taste,</item>
      <item>3 quarts of medium stock</item>
    </list>
  </div5>
  <div5>
    <head>Mode</head>
    <p>Peel and quarter the apples taking out their cores; put them into
      the stock, stew them gently till tender, Rub the whole through a
      strainer, add the seasoning. give it one boil up, and serve.</p>
  </div5>
  <div5>
    <head>Time</head>
    <p>1 hour.</p>
  </div5>
  <div5>
    <head>Average cost</head>
    <p>per quart, 1s.</p>
  </div5>
  <div5>
    <head>Seasonable</head>
    <p>from September to December.</p>
  </div5>
  <div5>
    <head>Sufficient</head>
    <p> for 10 persons</p>
  </div5>
  <div5>
    <head>The apple</head>
    <p>This useful fruit is mentioned in Holy Writ; and Homer describes it
      as valuable in his time... As a food, the apple cannot be
considered
      to rank high, as more than the half of it consists of water, and
      the rest of its properties are not the most nourishing. It is
      however a useful adjunct to other kinds of food, and, when
cooked, is
      esteemed as slightly laxative.</p>
  </div5>
</div4>
<div4 type="recipe">
  <head>Artichoke (Jerusalem) soup</head>
  <p>...</p>
</div4>
<!-- other recipes here -->
</div3>
</div2>

```

*Content model*

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"

```

```

maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.divTop"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0">
<alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="1"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.div6Like"/>
<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
<sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="1"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<alternate minOccurs="1"
maxOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
<classRef key="model.common"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.div6Like"/>
<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

*Schema Declaration*

```

element div5
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( ( model.div6Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
        | (
            ( ( ( schemaSpec | model.common ), model.global* )+ ),
            ( ( ( model.div6Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )* )
          )
      )
    )
  )

```

```

        )
        ),
        ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
    )?
    )
}

```

---

**<div6>** (level-6 text division) contains a sixth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.typed
    - @type

*Member of* model.div6Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* div5

*May contain*

*core:* address bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift ornament

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div7 docAuthor docDate epigraph  
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

*Example*

```
<div2 type="chapter">
  <head>Recipes</head>
  <head>Chapter VI.</head>
  <div3>
    <head>Fruit and vegetable soups</head>
    <p>...</p>
    <div4>
      <head>Stocks for all kinds of soups</head>
      <div5 type="recipe">
        <head>Rich strong stock</head>
        <div6>
          <head>Ingredients</head>
          <list>
            <item>4 lbs of shin of beef,</item>
            <item>4 lbs of knuckle of veal,</item>
            <!-- ... -->
            <item>4 quarts of water</item>
          </list>
        </div6>
        <div6>
          <head>Mode</head>
          <p>Line a delicately clean stewpan... Strain through a very
            fine hair sieve, or tammy, and it will be fit for use</p>
        </div6>
        <div6>
          <head>Time</head>
          <p>5 hours.</p>
        </div6>
        <div6>
          <head>Average cost</head>
          <p>1s 3d. per quart</p>
        </div6>
      </div5>
      <div5 type="recipe">
        <head>Medium Stock</head>
      <!-- ... -->
    </div4>
  </div3>
</div2>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
```

```

<alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.div7Like"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
        <classRef key="model.common"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate>
        <classRef key="model.div7Like"/>
        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

### Schema Declaration

```

element div6
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        (
          ( ( ( model.div7Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
          | (
              ( ( ( schemaSpec | model.common ), model.global* )+ ),
              ( ( ( model.div7Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
            )
        ),
        ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
      )?
    )
  )

```

```
    )  
  }
```

---

<div7> (level-7 text division) contains the smallest possible subdivision of the front, body or back of a text, larger than a paragraph. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.typed
    - @type

*Member of* model.div7Like

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* div6

*May contain*

*core:* address bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift ornament

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* ab

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

*textstructure*: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText  
opener postscript salute signed trailer

*Note* any sequence of low-level structural elements, e.g., paragraphs (<p>), lists (<list>),  
or examples (<eg> or <egXML>).

*Example*

```
<div2 type="chapter">
  <head>Recipes</head>
  <head>Chapter VI.</head>
  <div3>
    <head>Fruit and vegetable soups</head>
    <p>...</p>
    <div4>
      <head>Stocks for all kinds of soups</head>
      <div5 type="recipe">
        <head>Asparagus soup</head>
        <div6 type="altRecipe">
          <head>I.</head>
          <div7>
            <head>Ingredients</head>
            <list>
              <item> ...</item>
            </list>
          </div7>
          <div7>
            <head>Mode</head>
            <p>Put the beef, cut into pieces and rolled in flour, into a
              stewpan...</p>
          </div7>
        </div6>
      </div5>
    </div4>
  </div3>
  <div6 type="altRecipe">
    <head>II.</head>
    <div7>
      <head>Ingredients</head>
      <list>
        <item> ...</item>
      </list>
    </div7>
    <div7>
      <head>Mode</head>
      <p>Boil the peas, and rub them through a sieve; add the gravy...</p>
    </div7>
  </div6>
</div5>
</div4>
</div3>
</div2>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <sequence minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
<elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
<classRef key="model.common"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element div7
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( ( schemaSpec | model.common ), model.global* )+ ),
        ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
      )?
    )
  )
}
```

---

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next

- \* *@prev*
- \* *@exclude*
- \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body byline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group titlePage

May contain

core: abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift

character data

*Note* The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the `<docAuthor>` element may be used whether the `<byline>` element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it. (Attributions of authorship of a subset or part of the document, for example of a chapter in a textbook or an article in a newspaper, may be encoded with `<byline>` without `<docAuthor>`.)

*Example*

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
      Parts.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
    and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element docAuthor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

---

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.calendarSystem
    - @calendar
  - att.cmc
    - @generatedBy
  - att.datable
    - att.datable.w3c
      - \* @when

- \* @from
- \* @to

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docImprint front  
group titlePage

May contain

core: abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift

character data

*Note* Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it.

*Example*

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element docDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.calendarSystem.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

---

**<docEdition>** (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* • att.global

- @xml:id
- @n

- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

core: abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift

character data

Note Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

Example

```
<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>
```

Content model

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

### *Schema Declaration*

```
element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

---

**<docImprint>** (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source

*Member of* model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back front titlePage

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address cb date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num pb ptr pubPlace publisher q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* docDate

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Note* Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

*Example*

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
  Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
  at
  <pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
  <name>J. Roberts</name> in
  <pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
  <name>A. Dodd</name> without
  <pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
  and <name>J. Graves</name> in
  <pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
  <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <elementRef key="pubPlace"/>
    <elementRef key="docDate"/>
    <elementRef key="publisher"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element docImprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | pubPlace    | docDate    | publisher    | model.
  )
}
```

---

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* • att.global

– @xml:id

- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source

*Member of* model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back front titlePage

*May contain*

*core:* cb gap lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure

*textstructure:* titlePart

*Example*

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="titlePart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
```

```
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element docTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( ( titlePart, model.global* )+ ) )
}
```

---

**<editor>** contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source
- att.datable
  - att.datable.w3c
    - \* @when

- \* @from
- \* @to

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl

May contain

core: abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift

character data

*Note* A consistent format should be adopted.

Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

*Example*

```
<editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</editor>
<editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</editor>
<editor role="Managing_Editor">Anne Baillet</editor>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element editor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

---

**<email>** (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [3.6.2. Addresses]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global

- @xml:id

- @n

- @xml:lang

- @xml:space

- att.global.change

- \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy

Member of model.addressLike

Contained by

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

*core:* abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Note* The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822

*Example*

<email>membership@tei-c.org</email>

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element email { att.global.attributes, att.cmc.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

---

**<epigraph>** (epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3. Arguments, Epigraphs, and Postscripts 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.cmc
    - @generatedBy

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener titlePage

*May contain*

*core:* bibl cb cit desc gap l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift ornament

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* floatingText

*Example*

```
<epigraph xml:lang="la">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element epigraph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  ( model.common | model.global )*
}
```

<figure> (figure) groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [15.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

*Module* figures

*Attributes* • att.global

– @xml:id

– @n

– @xml:lang

– @xml:space

– att.global.change

\* @change

– att.global.facs

\* @facs

- att.global.linking
  - \* *@corresp*
  - \* *@synch*
  - \* *@sameAs*
  - \* *@copyOf*
  - \* *@next*
  - \* *@prev*
  - \* *@exclude*
  - \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

*Member of* model.global

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl cit date del editor email foreign head hi  
item l label lg list name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp sp speaker stage  
time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure table

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6  
div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front  
group opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* address bibl cb cit desc gap graphic head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p  
pb q sp stage

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift ornament

*figures:* figure formula table

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText  
postscript salute signed trailer

*Example*

```
<figure>
  <head>The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
  series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
  <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"
scale="0.5"/>
</figure>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <elementRef key="figDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element figure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike | model.common | figDesc | model.graphicLike | model.glc
  )
}
```

---

<floatingText> (floating text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes. [4.3.2. Floating Texts]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch

- \* *@sameAs*
- \* *@copyOf*
- \* *@next*
- \* *@prev*
- \* *@exclude*
- \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - *@type*

*Member of* model.attributable

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author cit del desc editor email foreign head hi item l label  
name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref sp speaker stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate  
docEdition epigraph postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* cb gap lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure

*textstructure:* back body front group

*Note* A floating text has the same content as any other <text> and may thus be interrupted by another floating text, or contain a <group> of tessellated texts.

*Example*

```

<body>
  <div type="scene">
    <sp>
      <p>Hush, the players begin...</p>
    </sp>
    <floatingText type="pwp">
      <body>
        <div type="act">
          <sp>
            <l>In Athens our tale takes place [...]</l>
          </sp>
        </div>
      </body>
    </floatingText>
  </div>
<!-- ... rest of nested act here -->

```

```
</body>
</floatingText>
<sp>
  <p>Now that the play is finished ...</p>
</sp>
</div>
</body>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="front"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <alternate>
      <elementRef key="body"/>
      <elementRef key="group"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="back"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element floatingText
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( ( front, model.global* )? ),
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( ( back, model.global* )? )
  )
}
```

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang

- *@xml:space*
- att.global.change
  - \* *@change*
- att.global.facs
  - \* *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - \* *@corresp*
  - \* *@synch*
  - \* *@sameAs*
  - \* *@copyOf*
  - \* *@next*
  - \* *@prev*
  - \* *@exclude*
  - \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift  
character data

*Note* The global *xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. Language Identification.

This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *xml:lang* attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.

The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

*Example*

```
This is  
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis  
philosophicus</foreign>?
```

*Content model*

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>  
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element foreign { att.global.attributes, att.cmc.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

---

<formula> (formula) contains a mathematical or other formula. [15.2. Formulæ and Mathematical Expressions]

*Module figures*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility

- \* @cert
- \* @resp
- att.global.source
- \* @source

- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy

Member of model.graphicLike

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine author cit date del editor email foreign head hi item l label  
name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref speaker stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell figure formula table

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: graphic hi q

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: formula

character data

Example

```
<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2$</formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi></formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="mathml">
  <m:math>
    <m:mi>E</m:mi>
    <m:mo>=</m:mo>
    <m:mi>m</m:mi>
    <m:msup>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mi>c</m:mi>
      </m:mrow>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mn>2</m:mn>
      </m:mrow>
    </m:msup>
  </m:math>
</formula>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
```

```
</alternate>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element formula
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  ( text | model.graphicLike | model.hiLike ) *
}
```

---

**<front>** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [4.6. Title Pages 4. Default Text Structure]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source

*Contained by structure:* floatingText text  
*May contain*

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

*core:* address cb gap head lb listBibl milestone note p pb

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div1 docAuthor docDate docEdition  
docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

*Note* Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the <front> and <back> elements are identical.

*Example*

```
<front>
  <epigraph>
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla
      pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent: <q xml:lang="grc">Σίβυλλα τί
        θέλεις</q>; respondebat illa: <q xml:lang="grc">ἀποθανεῖν θέλω.</q>
    </quote>
  </epigraph>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>
    </p>
  </div>
</front>
```

*Example*

```
<front>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
  <div type="preface">
    <head>Author's Note</head>
    <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
      she has done so inadvertently. ...</p>
  </div>
</front>
```

*Example*

```
<front>
  <div type="abstract">
    <div>
      <head> BACKGROUND:</head>
      <p>Food insecurity can put children at greater risk of obesity because
        of altered food choices and nonuniform consumption patterns.</p>
    </div>
    <div>
      <head> OBJECTIVE:</head>
      <p>We examined the association between obesity and both child-level
        food insecurity and personal food insecurity in US children.</p>
    </div>
    <div>
      <head> DESIGN:</head>
      <p>Data from 9,701 participants in the National Health and Nutrition
        Examination Survey, 2001-2010, aged 2 to 11 years were analyzed.
        Child-level food insecurity was assessed with the US Department of
        Agriculture's Food Security Survey Module based on eight
        child-specific questions. Personal food insecurity was assessed
        with
```

five additional questions. Obesity was defined, using physical measurements, as body mass index (calculated as kg/m<sup>2</sup>) greater than or equal to the age- and sex-specific 95th percentile of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention growth charts. Logistic regressions adjusted for sex, race/ethnic group, poverty level, and survey year were conducted to describe associations between obesity and food insecurity.</p></div><div><head> RESULTS:</head><p>Obesity was significantly associated with personal food insecurity for children aged 6 to 11 years (odds ratio=1.81; 95% CI 1.33 to 2.48), but not in children aged 2 to 5 years (odds ratio=0.88; 95% CI 0.51 to 1.51). Child-level food insecurity was not associated with obesity among 2- to 5-year-olds or 6- to 11-year-olds.</p></div><div><head> CONCLUSIONS:</head><p>Personal food insecurity is associated with an increased risk of obesity only in children aged 6 to 11 years. Personal food-insecurity measures may give different results than aggregate food-insecurity measures in children.</p></div></div></front>

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <alternate>
        <sequence>
          <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
          <alternate minOccurs="0"
            maxOccurs="unbounded">
            <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
            <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
            <classRef key="model.global"/>
          </alternate>
        </sequence>
        <sequence>
          <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
          <alternate minOccurs="0"
            maxOccurs="unbounded">
            <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
            <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
            <classRef key="model.global"/>
          </alternate>
        </sequence>
      </alternate>
      <sequence minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
      </sequence>
    </sequence>
  </content>
```

```

    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

### Schema Declaration

```

element front
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        (
          (
            model.div1Like,
            ( model.div1Like | model.frontPart | model.global )*
          )
          | (
            model.divLike,
            ( model.divLike | model.frontPart | model.global )*
          )
        ),
        ( ( model.divBottom, ( model.divBottom | model.global )* )? )
      )
    )
  )
}

```

---

**<g>** (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character. [5. Characters, Glyphs, and Writing Modes]

#### Module gaiji

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next

- \* @prev
- \* @exclude
- \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.typed
  - @type

Member of model.gLike

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl date del editor email foreign head hi item l label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref speaker stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain Character data only

Note The name g is short for *gaiji*, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph.

Example

```
<g ref="#ctlig">ct</g>
```

This example points to a <glyph> element with the identifier **ctlig** like the following:

```
<glyph xml:id="ctlig">
<!-- here we describe the particular ct-ligature intended -->
</glyph>
```

Example

```
<g ref="#per-glyph">per</g>
```

The medieval brevigraph *per* could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a <glyph> element with the identifier **per-glyph** as follows:

```
<glyph xml:id="per-glyph">
<!-- ... -->
</glyph>
```

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element g { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, text }
```

<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.cmc
    - @generatedBy
  - att.timed
    - @start
    - @end

©reason (reason) gives the reason for omission.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

*Suggested values include:* **cancelled** (cancelled)

**deleted** (deleted)

**editorial** (editorial) for features omitted from transcription due to editorial policy

**illegible** (illegible)  
**inaudible** (inaudible)  
**irrelevant** (irrelevant)  
**sampling** (sampling)

*Member of* model.global.edit

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl cit date del editor email foreign head hi  
item l label lg list name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp sp speaker stage  
time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure table

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6  
div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front  
group opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* desc

*Note* The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 12.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion.

*Example*

```
<gap quantity="4" unit="chars"  
reason="illegible"/>
```

*Example*

```
<gap quantity="1" unit="essay"  
reason="sampling"/>
```

*Example*

```
<del>  
  <gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" unit="chars"  
    reason="illegible"/>  
</del>
```

*Example*

```
<gap extent="several lines" reason="lost"/>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>  
  <alternate minOccurs="0"  
    maxOccurs="unbounded">  
    <classRef key="model.descLike"/>  
    <classRef key="model.certLike"/>
```

```
</alternate>
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```
element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  attribute reason
  {
    list
    {
      (
        "cancelled"
        | "deleted"
        | "editorial"
        | "illegible"
        | "inaudible"
        | "irrelevant"
        | "sampling"
      )+
    }
  }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

---

**<graphic>** (graphic) indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 12.1. Digital Facsimiles]

#### Module core

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select

- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.resourced
  - @url
- att.typed
  - @type

Member of model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine author cit date del editor email foreign head hi item l label  
name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref speaker stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell figure formula table

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

core: desc

Note The *mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *url* attribute.

Within the body of a text, a <graphic> element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a <facsimile> or <sourceDoc> element, however, a <graphic> element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded.

Example

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
    foreground, and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Example

```
<facsimile>
  <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
    <surface>
      <graphic url="page1.png"/>
    </surface>
    <surface>
      <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
    </surface>
  </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
```

```
<graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
</surface>
</surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
```

*Example*

```
<facsimile>
  <surfaceGrp n="leaf1" xml:id="spi001">
    <surface xml:id="spi001r">
      <graphic type="normal"
        subtype="thumbnail" url="spi/thumb/001r.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="normal" subtype="low-res"
        url="spi/normal/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="normal"
        subtype="high-res" url="spi/normal/highRes/001r.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="high-contrast"
        subtype="low-res" url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="high-contrast"
        subtype="high-res" url="spi/contrast/highRes/001r.jpg"/>
    </surface>
    <surface xml:id="spi001v">
      <graphic type="normal"
        subtype="thumbnail" url="spi/thumb/001v.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="normal" subtype="low-res"
        url="spi/normal/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="normal"
        subtype="high-res" url="spi/normal/highRes/001v.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="high-contrast"
        subtype="low-res" url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="high-contrast"
        subtype="high-res" url="spi/contrast/highRes/001v.jpg"/>
      <zone xml:id="spi001v_detail01">
        <graphic type="normal"
          subtype="thumbnail" url="spi/thumb/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
        <graphic type="normal"
          subtype="low-res"
          url="spi/normal/lowRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
        <graphic type="normal"
          subtype="high-res"
          url="spi/normal/highRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
        <graphic type="high-contrast"
          subtype="low-res"
          url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
        <graphic type="high-contrast"
          subtype="high-res"
          url="spi/contrast/highRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
      </zone>
    </surface>
  </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <classRef key="model.descLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element graphic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  model.descLike*
}
```

---

**<group>** (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. Default Text Structure 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.typed
    - @type

*Contained by structure:* floatingText group text  
*May contain*

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

*core:* address cb gap head lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener  
postscript salute signed text trailer

*Example*

```
<text>
<!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->
  <front>
<!-- biographical notice by editor -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
<!-- first poem -->
    </text>
    <text>
<!-- second poem -->
    </text>
  </group>
</text>
<!-- end of Pope section-->
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence>
      <alternate>
        <elementRef key="text"/>
        <elementRef key="group"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="text"/>
        <elementRef key="group"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element group
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
    model.divBottom*
  )
}
```

```
} )
```

---

<handShift> (handwriting shift) marks the beginning of a sequence of text written in a new hand, or the beginning of a scribal stint. [12.3.2.1. Document Hands]

*Module* transcr

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source

@new indicates a <handNote> element describing the hand concerned.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* teidata.pointer

*Note* This attribute serves the same function as the *hand* attribute provided for those elements which are members of the att.transcriptional class. It may be renamed at a subsequent major release.

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del editor email foreign head hi item l label lg name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain* Empty element

*Note* The `<handShift>` element may be used either to denote a shift in the document hand (as from one scribe to another, on one writing style to another). Or, it may indicate a shift within a document hand, as a change of writing style, character or ink. Like other milestone elements, it should appear at the point of transition from some other state to the state which it describes.

*Example*

```
<l>When wolde the cat dwelle in his ynne</l>
<handShift medium="greenish-ink"/>
<l>And if the cattes skynne be slyk <handShift medium="black-ink"/> and
gaye</l>
```

*Content model* `<content> <empty/></content>`

*Schema Declaration*

```
element handShift { att.global.attributes, attribute new { text }?, empty }
```

---

**<head>** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]

*Module core*

*Attributes* • att.global

- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility

- \* @cert
- \* @resp
- att.global.source
- \* @source
  
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.typed
  - @type
- att.written
  - @hand

Member of model.headLike model.pLike.front

Contained by

core: lg list listBibl

figures: figure table

textstructure: argument back body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group  
postscript

May contain

core: abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift

character data

*Note* The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.

*Example* The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the
ecclesiastical history of
  Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <div2 type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four
hundred and twelve
    years passed.</p>
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five
hundred and ninety-six
    years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
Martin.</trailer>
```

```

</div2>
</div1>

```

*Example* When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading "Secunda conclusio") they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the *place* attribute.

```

<div type="subsection">
  <head place="margin">Secunda conclusio</head>
  <p>
    <lb n="1251"/>
    <hi rend="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab
    obiectis<supplied>.</supplied>
    </hi>
    <lb n="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad
    proprium
    [...]
  </p>
</div>

```

*Example* The `<head>` element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```

With a few exceptions, connectives are equally
useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition,
argument. <list rend="bulleted">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
  <item>
  <!-- ... -->
  </item>
</list>

```

*Content model*

```

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

*Schema Declaration*

```

element head
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  (
    text

```

```

} | lg | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.hiLike | model.

```

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.written
  - @hand

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell formula

*linking*: ab seg

*textstructure*: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core*: abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite*: b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures*: figure formula table

*gaiji*: g

*linking*: seg

*textstructure*: floatingText

*transcr*: handShift

character data

*Example*

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element hi
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

---

**<i>** (italics) for capturing typographical feature: italicized glyphs.

*Namespace* <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/tite/1.0>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_tite

*Attributes* • att.global

– @xml:id

– @n

– @xml:lang

– @xml:space

– att.global.change

\* @change

– att.global.facs

\* @facs

– att.global.linking

\* @corresp

- \* @synch
- \* @sameAs
- \* @copyOf
- \* @next
- \* @prev
- \* @exclude
- \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell formula

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift  
character data

Content model

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element i { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.sortable
    - @sortKey

*Containable* list

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num p pb ptr q ref sp stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift  
character data

*Note* May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.

Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the <item> element is by

definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not *n*.

*Example*

```
<list rend="numbered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the
Church revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  <item> ...</item>
</list>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element item
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

---

<1> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.6. Speech Contents]

*Module core*

*Attributes* • att.global

- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev

- \* *@exclude*
- \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

*Member of* model.lLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add del head hi item lg note p q ref sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi label lb list  
listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Example*

```
<l met="x/x/x/x/x/" real="/xx/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer's
day?</l>
```

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:l">

```
<sch:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(../tei:note//tei:l[. = current()])]">Abstract
model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements.</sch:report>
```

```
</sch:rule>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
```

```
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element l
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global )*
}
```

---

<label> (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.8. Lists]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.typed
  - @type

- att.written
  - @hand

Member of model.labelLike

Contained by

core: add del desc head hi item l lg list note p q ref stage title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell figure

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift

character data

*Example* Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label>med</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <label>wude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <label>awe</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <label>lhouth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
  <label>sterteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
    <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
    <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
  </cit>
  </item>
  <label>verteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
  <label>murie</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
  <label>swik</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
  <label>naver</label>
```

```
<item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>
```

*Example* Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the *n* attribute on the <item> element:

```
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos. <list rend="runon
numbered">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been
sent to the press.</item>
  <label>(2) </label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the
author and the
  printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>
```

*Example* Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```
<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod – <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit
amor, et nos cedamus
  amori.</quote>
  </item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>
```

Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

*Example* Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

```
<p>[...]  
<lb/>& n'entrer en mauuais & mal-heu-  
<lb/>r  mefnage. Or des que le confente-  
<lb/>ment des parties y eft le mariage eft  
<lb/> arreft , quoy que de faict il ne foit  
<label place="margin">Puiffance maritale  
  entre les Romains.</label>  
<lb/> conformm . Depuis la conformma-  
<lb/>tion du mariage la femme eft fous  
<lb/> la puiffance du mary, s'il n'eft efcla-  
<lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce  
<lb/> cas, la femme, qui a efpouf  vn en-  
<lb/>fant de famille, eft fous la puiffance  
[...]</p>
```

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element label
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

---

**<lb>** (line beginning) marks the beginning of a topographic line in some edition or version of a text. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.6. Speech Contents]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source

- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.typed
  - @type

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl cit date del editor email foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp sp speaker stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell figure table

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Note By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The n attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking the beginning of each new topographic line on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where it occurs; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.

The type attribute may be used to characterize the line beginning in any respect. The more specialized attributes break, ed, or edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the beginning of the new topographic line is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example This example shows the encoding of the beginning of each new topographic line within a metrical line, indicating where it occurs in both the 1667 and 1674 editions:

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the
Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our
woe,</l>
```

Example This example shows the encoding of the beginning of a new topographical line as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The break attribute is used to show that the beginning of the new line does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```
<titlePart>
  <lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.
</titlePart>
```

Content model <content> <empty/></content>

Schema Declaration

```
element lb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
```

<pre> empty } </pre>
----------------------

**<lg>** (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.6. Speech Contents]

*Module* core

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.cmc
    - @generatedBy
  - att.typed
    - @type

*Member of* model.divPart model.paraPart

*Contained by*

*core:* add del head hi item lg note p q ref sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* add address cb del desc gap head l label lb lg milestone note pb stage unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener  
postscript salute signed trailer

*transcr:* handShift

*Note* contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

*Example*

```
<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>is equivocal.</l>
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
  <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>
```

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:lg">

```
<sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) >
0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg, or gap element.</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
```

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:lg">

```
<sch:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(../tei:note//tei:lg[. = current()])]">Abstract
model violation: Lines may not contain line groups.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.pPart.transcriptional"/>
      <elementRef key="lg"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.pPart.transcriptional"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <elementRef key="lg"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence minOccurs="0">
```

```

maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

### Schema Declaration

```

element lg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      model.lLike      | model.stageLike      | model.labellike      | model.pPart.
      (
        model.lLike      | model.stageLike      | model.labellike      | model.pPart.
        ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*)
      )
    )
  )
}

```

---

**<list>** (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.8. Lists]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility

- \* @cert
- \* @resp
- att.global.source
- \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.sortable
  - @sortKey

**@type** (type) describes the nature of the items in the list.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **gloss** (gloss) each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a <label> element preceding the list item.

**index** (index) each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.

**instructions** (instructions) each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.

**litany** (litany) each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.

**sylogism** (sylogism) each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.

*Note* Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of *type* on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *rend* or *style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.

The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

*Member of* model.listLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add del desc head hi item l note p q ref sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument back body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* address cb desc gap head item label lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

*Note* May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

*Example*

```
<list rend="numbered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with
  <list rend="bulleted">
    <item>rings on his fingers</item>
    <item>bells on his toes</item>
  </list>
</item>
</list>
```

*Example*

```
<list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted">
  <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
  <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>
  <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item>
</list>
```

*Example*

```
<list type="litany" rend="simple">
  <item>God save us from drought.</item>
  <item>God save us from pestilence.</item>
  <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item>
  <item>Praise be to God.</item>
</list>
```

*Example* The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section">
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who
    is caught with
      the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of
    the goods is] over
      eightpence.
    <list rend="numbered">
      <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief
    with his
      wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that
    account – or to
      clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
      <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or
    to escape, he is
      not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
      <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40
    days, and he may
      then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand
    surety for him
      that he will desist for ever.</item>
      <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
    with his wergild,
      or to bring him back there.</item>
      <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
    with his wergild,
```

```

        whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and
everyone of those who
        supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a
fine.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
lordless men, from whom
        no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to
fetch back such a
        person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
<list rend="numbered">
    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on
that appointed day,
        he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him
is to strike him
        down as a thief.</item>
    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him
with his wergild
        or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses
justice and upholds
        his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the
value of the goods and
        120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he
demands justice as
        often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have
done, if he had
        refused him justice.
<list rend="numbered">
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his
slave, and it becomes
        known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his
wergild on the first
        occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all
that he owns.</item>
    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our
reeves, who has been
        an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to
the same.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
concerning treachery to
        a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot
deny it or is
        afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
</list>
</div1>

```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

*Example*

```

<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public
council ... and they
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross,
and afterwards

```

```

inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the
sign of the Holy
Cross.
<list rend="simple">
  <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of
York, have
  subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with
the sign of the Holy
  Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with
  the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have
subscribed with the
  sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have
subscribed with the
  sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed
with the sign of
  the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with
devout will.</item>
  <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
  <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the
sign of the Holy
  Cross.</item>
</list>
</p>

```

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']">  
 <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence  
 of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert>  
 </sch:rule>

*Content model*

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
        maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate>
      <sequence minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="item"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"
          minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="headLabel"
        minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="headItem"
        minOccurs="0"/>
      <sequence minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="label"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"

```

```
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="item"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element list
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.cmc.attributes,
    att.sortable.attributes,
    attribute type
    {
        "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism"
    }?,
    (
        ( model.divTop | model.global | desc* )*,
        (
            ( ( item, model.global* )+ )
            | (
                headLabel?,
                headItem?,
                ( ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+ )
            )
        ),
        ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
    )
}
```

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs

- att.global.linking
  - \* *@corresp*
  - \* *@synch*
  - \* *@sameAs*
  - \* *@copyOf*
  - \* *@next*
  - \* *@prev*
  - \* *@exclude*
  - \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.declarable
  - *@default*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*

*Member of* model.biblLike model.frontPart

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit del desc head hi item l listBibl note p q ref stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument back body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition  
epigraph front postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* bibl cb desc head lb listBibl milestone pb

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*Example*

```

<listBibl>
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
  </bibl>
  <biblStruct>
    <analytic>
      <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
    </analytic>
  </biblStruct>
</listBibl>

```

```
<monogr>
  <title>The Penny Histories</title>
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
  <imprint>
    <publisher>OUP</publisher>
    <date>1968</date>
  </imprint>
</monogr>
</biblStruct>
</listBibl>
```

*Schematron* <sch:pattern is-a="declarable">  
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:listBibl"/> </sch:pattern>

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"
        minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="listRelation"
        minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.biblLike"
        minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"
          minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="relation"
          minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listRelation"
          minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element listBibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    desc*,
    ( model.milestoneLike | relation | listRelation )*,
    (
```

```

        (
            model.biblLike+,
            ( model.milestoneLike | relation | listRelation )*
        )+
    )
}

```

---

**<milestone>** (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.cmc
    - @generatedBy
  - att.milestoneUnit
    - @unit
  - att.typed
    - @type

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl cit date del editor email foreign head hi  
item l label lg list listBibl name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp sp speaker  
stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell figure table

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6  
div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front  
group opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Note For this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.

The order in which <milestone> elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

Example

```
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>  
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element milestone  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.cmc.attributes,  
  att.milestoneUnit.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
  empty  
}
```

---

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.6.1. Referring Strings]

Module core

- Attributes
- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp

- \* *@synch*
- \* *@sameAs*
- \* *@copyOf*
- \* *@next*
- \* *@prev*
- \* *@exclude*
- \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - att.datable.w3c
    - \* *@when*
    - \* *@from*
    - \* *@to*
- att.personal
  - *@full*
  - *@sort*
- att.typed
  - *@type*

*Member of* model.nameLike.agent

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp respStmt speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Note* Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

*Example*

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name type="person" ref="#H0C001">Occeleve</name>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element name
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

---

<note> (note) contains a note or annotation. [3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 10.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev

- \* *@exclude*
- \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

*Member of* model.noteLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl cit date del editor email foreign head hi  
item l label lg list name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp respStmt sp  
speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure table

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6  
div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front  
group opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num p pb ptr q ref sp stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Example* In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

And yet it is not only  
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the  
painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss"

```
resp="#MDMH">
  <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
  distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
  the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
  confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
  <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
  <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.
</note> style of the
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this
psychological significance.

<!-- elsewhere in the document -->
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
  <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
  <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>
```

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.

*Example* The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
family during the second half of the eleventh century,
<note n="126" anchored="true"> The
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact,
a reference to
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from
Geniza documents
published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element note
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

---

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
- @xml:id

- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy

@type indicates the type of numeric value.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5

**ordinal** ordinal number, e.g. 21st

**fraction** fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters

**percentage** a percentage

*Note* If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

*Member of* model.measureLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

*core:* abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift  
character data

*Note* Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 19. Feature Structures. The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

*Example*

```
<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on  
my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p>  
<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi>  
</num> cm per second.</p>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>  
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element num  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.cmc.attributes,  
  attribute type { "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" }?,  
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

---

**<opener>** (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.  
[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking

- \* *@corresp*
- \* *@synch*
- \* *@sameAs*
- \* *@copyOf*
- \* *@next*
- \* *@prev*
- \* *@exclude*
- \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

*Member of* model.divTopPart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*textstructure:* body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 group postscript

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address cb date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note  
num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Example*

```
<opener>
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

*Example*

```
<opener>
<dateline>
  <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
  <date>November 11, 1848</date>
</dateline>
<salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
```

```
</opener>  
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have  
prevented me from  
earlier enquiring...</p>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>  
  <alternate minOccurs="0"  
    maxOccurs="unbounded">  
    <textNode/>  
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>  
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>  
    <elementRef key="argument"/>  
    <elementRef key="byline"/>  
    <elementRef key="dateline"/>  
    <elementRef key="epigraph"/>  
    <elementRef key="salute"/>  
    <elementRef key="signed"/>  
    <classRef key="model.global"/>  
  </alternate>  
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element opener  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.cmc.attributes,  
  att.written.attributes,  
  (  
    text  
    | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | argument    | byline    | dateline    | epigraph  
  )  
}
```

---

**<ornament>** for capturing typographical feature: printer's ornament, horizontal line, strings of asterisks or periods, etc, indicating an informal division that does not call for a new **<div>** element. If a horizontal rule or printer's ornament, use appropriate *rend* attribute and leave the element empty; if the ornament can be represented with characters, include these in the element.

*Namespace* <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/tite/1.0>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_tite

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking

- \* *@corresp*
- \* *@synch*
- \* *@sameAs*
- \* *@copyOf*
- \* *@next*
- \* *@prev*
- \* *@exclude*
- \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*

*Member of* model.inter model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* add del desc head hi item l note p q ref stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain* Character data only

*Content model* `<content> <textNode/></content>`

*Schema Declaration* `element ornament { att.global.attributes, text }`

---

**<p>** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.6. Speech Contents]

*Module core*

*Attributes* • att.global

- *@xml:id*
- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.change
  - \* *@change*
- att.global.facs
  - \* *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - \* *@corresp*
  - \* *@synch*
  - \* *@sameAs*

- \* *@copyOf*
- \* *@next*
- \* *@prev*
- \* *@exclude*
- \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.fragmentable
  - *@part*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.pLike

Contained by

core: item note q sp stage

figures: cell figure

textstructure: argument back body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph front  
postscript

May contain

core: abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift  
character data

Example

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.  
<q>What have you  
done?</q>  
</p>  
<p>  
<q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied  
Thjostolf.  
</p>  
<p>  
<q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.  
</p>
```

```
<p>
  <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for
me.</q>
</p>
```

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:p"> <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:ab or ancestor::tei:p) and not( ancestor::tei:floatingText | parent::tei:exemplum | parent::tei:item | parent::tei:note | parent::tei:q | parent::tei:quote | parent::tei:remarks | parent::tei:said | parent::tei:sp | parent::tei:stage | parent::tei:cell | parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </sch:report> </sch:rule>

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:l/tei:p"> <sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:floatingText | parent::tei:figure | parent::tei:note"> Abstract model violation: Metrical lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:assert> </sch:rule>

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element p
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

---

**<pb>** (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document.  
[3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs

- \* @copyOf
- \* @next
- \* @prev
- \* @exclude
- \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.typed
  - @type

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl cit date del editor email foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp sp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure table

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

*Note* A <pb> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself.

The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the page beginning in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page beginning is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

*Example* Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>
<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p>
```

*Example* A page beginning may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *fac*s attribute

```
<body>
  <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>
```

```
<!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;
the text it contains is encoded here -->
<p>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>
<!-- similarly, for page 2 -->
<p>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
</body>
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element pb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  empty
}
```

---

**<postscript>** contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert

- \* @resp
  - att.global.source
- \* @source
  - att.cmc
    - @generatedBy
  - att.written
    - @hand

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group postscript

May contain

core: address bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

derived-module-tei\_tite: colShift ornament

figures: figure table

linking: ab

textstructure: closer floatingText opener postscript signed trailer

Example

```
<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
      <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those
    logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of
    the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the
    axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
    <signed>Seymour</signed>
  </closer>
  <postscript>
    <label>P.S.</label>
    <p>The collision occurred on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul
    01</date>.</p>
  </postscript>
</div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divTopPart"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

```

    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

### Schema Declaration

```

element postscript
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  (
    ( model.global | model.divTopPart )*,
    model.common,
    ( model.global | model.common )*,
    ( ( model.divBottomPart, model.global* )* )
  )
}

```

---

**<ptr>** (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 17.1. Links]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition

- \* @rend
- \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.pointing
  - @targetLang
  - @target
- att.typed
  - @type

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl cit date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Note The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

Example

```
<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/>  
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>  
<ptr cRef="1.3.4"/>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:ptr"> <sch:report test="@target and @cRef">Only  
one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on  
<sch:name/>.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Content model 

<content> <empty/></content>
------------------------------

Schema Declaration

<pre>element ptr {   att.global.attributes,   att.cmc.attributes,   att.pointing.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   empty }</pre>
--

---

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source

*Member of* model.imprintPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*textstructure:* docImprint

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Example*

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
```

```
<date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element pubPlace { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

---

<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source

*Member of* model.imprintPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*textstructure:* docImprint

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Note* Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

*Example*

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element publisher { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

---

**<q>** (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.  
[3.3.3. Quotation]

*Module core*

*Attributes* • att.global

– @xml:id

– @n

– @xml:lang

– @xml:space

– att.global.change

\* @change

– att.global.facs

\* @facs

– att.global.linking

- \* *@corresp*
- \* *@synch*
- \* *@sameAs*
- \* *@copyOf*
- \* *@next*
- \* *@prev*
- \* *@exclude*
- \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.ascribed.directed
  - *@toWhom*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

**@type** (type) may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **spoken** (spoken) representation of speech

**thought** (thought) representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

**written** (written) quotation from a written source

**soCalled** (so called) authorial distance

**foreign** (foreign) foreign words

**distinct** (distinct) linguistically distinct

**term** technical term

**emph** (emph) rhetorically emphasized

**mentioned** (mentioned) referring to itself, not its normal referent

*Member of* model.common model.hiLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl cit date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp sp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure formula

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument body byline closer dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint epigraph opener postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num p pb ptr q ref sp stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Note* May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, `<q>` may be thought of as syntactic sugar for `<hi>` with a value of *rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

*Example*

```
It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> – to enter the
letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press
<q>0 0 f c</q>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element q
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "spoken"
    | "thought"
    | "written"
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
    | "distinct"
    | "term"
    | "emph"
    | "mentioned"
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

---

**<ref>** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 17.1. Links]

*Module core*

*Attributes* • att.global  
– @xml:id

- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.pointing
  - @targetLang
  - @target
- att.typed
  - @type

*Member of* model.ptrLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl cit date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji*: g

*linking*: seg

*textstructure*: floatingText

*transcr*: handShift

character data

*Note* The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

*Example*

```
See especially
<ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second
sentence</ref>
```

*Example*

```
See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.
```

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:ref"> <sch:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <sch:name/>.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element ref
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

---

**<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking

- \* @corresp
- \* @synch
- \* @sameAs
- \* @copyOf
- \* @next
- \* @prev
- \* @exclude
- \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.datable
  - att.datable.w3c
    - \* @when
    - \* @from
    - \* @to

*Containability* respStmt

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address cb date email foreign gap hi lb milestone name note num pb ptr q ref time title

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure

character data

*Note* The attribute *ref*, inherited from the class *att.canonical* may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at

<http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage.

*Example*

```
<respStmt>
  <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element resp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

---

**<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.change
    - \* *@change*
  - att.global.facs
    - \* *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - \* *@corresp*
    - \* *@synch*
    - \* *@sameAs*
    - \* *@copyOf*
    - \* *@next*
    - \* *@prev*
    - \* *@exclude*
    - \* *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* *@rend*
    - \* *@style*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* *@cert*
    - \* *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - \* *@source*

*Member of* model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*May contain*

core: name note resp

Example

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>
```

Example

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <sequence>
        <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
          minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
      <sequence>
        <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
          minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"
          maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element respStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) ),
    note*
  )
}
```

---

<row> (row) contains one row of a table. [15.1.1. TEI Tables]

Module figures

- Attributes
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space

- att.global.change
  - \* *@change*
- att.global.facs
  - \* *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - \* *@corresp*
  - \* *@synch*
  - \* *@sameAs*
  - \* *@copyOf*
  - \* *@next*
  - \* *@prev*
  - \* *@exclude*
  - \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.tableDecoration
  - *@role*
  - *@rows*
  - *@cols*

*Content model:* table

*May contain*

*figures:* cell

*Example*

```
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <elementRef key="cell" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element row { att.global.attributes, att.tableDecoration.attributes, cell+ }
```

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.cmc
    - @generatedBy
  - att.written
    - @hand

*Member of* model.divWrapper

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* body closer div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Example*

```
<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the  
readinge.</salute>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element salute  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.cmc.attributes,  
  att.written.attributes,  
  macro.paraContent}
```

---

**<seg>** (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level.  
[17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 6.2. Components of the Verse Line 7.2.6.  
Speech Contents]

*Module linking*

*Attributes* • att.global

- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend

- \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
- \* @cert
- \* @resp
- att.global.source
- \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.notated
  - @notation
- att.typed
  - @type
- att.written
  - @hand

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl date del editor email foreign head hi item l label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref speaker stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift

character data

Note The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element.

Example

```
<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

Example

```
<s>
  <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the
```

```
ballfield.  
</s>
```

### Example

```
<seg type="preamble">  
  <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king  
  in Frankish country.</seg>  
  <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>  
  <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg>  
</seg>
```

### Content model

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```
element seg  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.cmc.attributes,  
  att.notated.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
  att.written.attributes,  
  macro.paraContent}
```

---

**<signed>** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

- Attributes
- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select

- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.written
  - @hand

Member of model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body closer div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group opener  
postscript

May contain

core: abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift  
character data

Example

```
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>  
</signed>
```

Example

```
<closer>  
<signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,  
<list>  
  <item>John Bull,</item>  
  <item>Nic. Frog.</item>  
</list>  
</signed>  
</closer>
```

Content model

```
<content>  
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element signed
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

**<smcap>** (smallcaps) for capturing typographical feature: glyphs in small capitals.

*Namespace* <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/tite/1.0>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_tite

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source

*Member of* model.hiLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell formula

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Content model*

```
<content>  
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element smcap { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

---

**<sp>** (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.2. Speeches and Speakers]

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style

- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.ascribed.directed
  - @toWhom
- att.written
  - @hand

*Member of* model.divPart

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q stage

*figures:* cell figure

*textstructure:* argument body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph postscript

*May contain*

*core:* cb cit gap l lb lg list milestone note p pb q speaker stage

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* ab

*textstructure:* floatingText

*Note* The *who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

*Example*

```

<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unrepresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the
  first place [...]</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll – I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but
  for the present I
  will forbear [...]</p>
</sp>

```

*Content model*

```

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
    <elementRef key="speaker"/>
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

```
<elementRef key="q"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element sp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  (
    model.stageLike | model.global | model.lLike | model.pLike | model.list
  )
}
```

---

**<speaker>** contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama]

*Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.written
    - @hand

*Containable* sp

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address cb cit date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name  
note num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Note* This element may be used to transcribe which character is speaking in a dramatic text as indicated by the source text; the *who* attribute of an <sp> element may be used to point to another element (typically a <role>) which provides information about the character speaking. Either or both may be used.

*Example*

```
<sp who="#ni #rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
<list type="speakers">
  <item xml:id="ni"/>
  <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element speaker
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

---

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Stage Directions]

*Module core*

*Attributes* • att.global

– @xml:id

– @n

– @xml:lang

- *@xml:space*
- att.global.change
  - \* *@change*
- att.global.facs
  - \* *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - \* *@corresp*
  - \* *@synch*
  - \* *@sameAs*
  - \* *@copyOf*
  - \* *@next*
  - \* *@prev*
  - \* *@exclude*
  - \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.ascribed.directed
  - *@toWhom*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

*core:* add del desc head hi item l lg note p q ref sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition epigraph  
postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num p pb ptr q ref sp stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Note* The *who* attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction.

*Example*

```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse and
falls.</stage>
<!-- Middleton : Yorkshire Tragedy -->
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the
family.</stage>
<!-- Lorraine Hansbury : a raisin in in the sun -->
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="entrance modifier">Enter Latrocinio disguised as an
empiric</stage>
<!-- Middleton: The Widow -->
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

*Example*

```
<l>Behold. <stage n="*" place="margin">Here the vp<lb/>per part of the
<hi>Scene</hi> open'd; when
  straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <hi>Pure Artes</hi> sitting on
  two semi<lb/>circular ben<lb/>ches, one a<lb/>boue another: who sate
thus till the rest of the
  <hi>Prologue</hi> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in
  order within the <hi>Scene,</hi> whiles the Musicke plaid</stage> Our
Poet knowing our free hearts</l>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element stage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

---

**<sub>** (subscript) for capturing typographical feature: subscript glyphs.

*Namespace* <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/tite/1.0>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_tite

*Attributes* • att.global

– @xml:id

- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source

*Member of* model.hiLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell formula

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Content model*

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

```

*Schema Declaration*

```

element sub { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

```

---

**<sup>** (superscript) for capturing typographical feature: superscript glyphs.

*Namespace* <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/tite/1.0>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_tite

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility
    - \* @cert
    - \* @resp
  - att.global.source
    - \* @source

*Member of* model.hiLike

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell formula

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Content model*

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element sup { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

---

**<table>** (table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [15.1.1. TEI Tables]

*Module figures*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition

- \* *@rend*
- \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - *@type*

**@rows** (rows) indicates the number of rows in the table.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.count

*Note* If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

**@cols** (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.count

*Note* If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

*Member of* model.listLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add del desc head hi item l note p q ref sp stage title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell figure

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* argument back body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition  
epigraph postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* address cb gap graphic head lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure formula row

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript  
salute signed trailer

*Note* Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.

Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

*Example*

```
<table rows="4" cols="4">
  <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
  <row role="label">
    <cell role="data"/>
```

```

    <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
    <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
    <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">8</cell>
    <cell role="data">128</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">6</cell>
    <cell role="data">36</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">20</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Wymondham</cell>
    <cell role="data">1</cell>
    <cell role="data">11</cell>
    <cell role="data">22</cell>
  </row>
</table>

```

*Content model*

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate>
      <sequence minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="row"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"
          minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
      <sequence minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"
          minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>

```

### Schema Declaration

```
element table
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute rows { text }?,
  attribute cols { text }?,
  (
    ( model.headLike | model.global )*,
    (
      ( ( row, model.global* )+ )
      | ( ( model.graphicLike, model.global* )+ )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
  )
}
```

---

**<text>** (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source

- att.typed
  - @type
- att.written
  - @hand

*Content model:* group

*May contain*

*core:* cb gap lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift

*figures:* figure

*textstructure:* back body front group

*Note* This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

*Example*

```

<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
  </body>
</text>

```

*Example* The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```

<text>
  <front>
<!-- front matter for the whole group -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
<!-- first text -->
    </text>
    <text>
<!-- second text -->
    </text>
  </group>
</text>

```

*Content model*

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="front"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
  <alternate>
    <elementRef key="body"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

```

    <elementRef key="group"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
    <elementRef key="back"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

### Schema Declaration

```

element text
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( ( front, model.global* )? ),
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( ( back, model.global* )? )
  )
}

```

---

**<time>** (time) contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times]

*Module core*

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition

- \* @rend
- \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.calendarSystem
  - @calendar
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.typed
  - @type
- att.dateable.w3c
  - ~~from~~
  - ~~to~~
  - @when

Member of model.dateLike

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

derived-module-*tei\_tite*: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: abbr add address cb date del email foreign gap graphic hi lb milestone name note  
num pb ptr q ref time title unclear

derived-module-*tei\_tite*: b colShift i smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

linking: seg

transcr: handShift  
character data

Example

As he sat smiling, the  
quarter struck – <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.

Content model

```
<content>  
<alternate minOccurs="0"  
  maxOccurs="unbounded">  
  <textNode/>  
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>  
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
```

```
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

### *Schema Declaration*

```
element time
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.calendarSystem.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}
```

---

**<title>** (title) contains a title for any kind of work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors  
2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

### *Module core*

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source
  - att.cmc

- @generatedBy
- att.dataable
  - att.dataable.w3c
    - \* @when
    - \* @from
    - \* @to

**@type** classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **main** main title

**sub** (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

**alt** (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

**short** abbreviated form of title

**desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

*Note* This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

**@level** indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.

**m** (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works

**j** (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper

**s** (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection

**u** (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

*Note* The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is *ipso facto* of level a, and one appearing within a <series> element of level s. For this reason, the *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

## B FORMAL SPECIFICATION

---

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Note* The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class `att.canonical` may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

*Example*

```
<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of  
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,  
18–21 July 1989</title>
```

*Example*

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable  
edition</title>
```

*Example*

```
<title type="full">  
  <title type="main">Synthèse</title>  
  <title type="sub">an international journal for  
    epistemology, methodology and history of  
    science</title>  
</title>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element title  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.cmc.attributes,  
  att.dateable.attributes,  
  attribute type { text }?,
```

attribute level { "a"   "m"   "j"   "s"   "u" }?, macro.paraContent}
---

---

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

- Attributes*
- att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:space
    - att.global.change
      - \* @change
    - att.global.facs
      - \* @facs
    - att.global.linking
      - \* @corresp
      - \* @synch
      - \* @sameAs
      - \* @copyOf
      - \* @next
      - \* @prev
      - \* @exclude
      - \* @select
    - att.global.rendition
      - \* @rend
      - \* @style
    - att.global.responsibility
      - \* @cert
      - \* @resp
    - att.global.source
      - \* @source

**@type** classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Note* This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the main title page of a work.

*Member of* model.frontPart

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back front

*May contain*

*core:* cb gap graphic lb milestone note pb

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* colShift ornament

*figures:* figure

*textstructure:* argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle  
epigraph titlePart

*Example*

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
    <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the
West.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
  <byline>By T.D.</byline>
  <figure>
    <head>TP</head>
    <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
    <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
  </figure>
  <docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for
<name>T.P.</name>
  <date>1612.</date>
</docImprint>
</titlePage>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element titlePage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { text }?,
  (
    model.global*,
    model.titlepagePart,
    ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*
  )
}
```

---

**<titlePart>** (title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes* • att.global

- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.change
  - \* @change
- att.global.facs
  - \* @facs
- att.global.linking
  - \* @corresp
  - \* @synch
  - \* @sameAs
  - \* @copyOf
  - \* @next
  - \* @prev
  - \* @exclude
  - \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source

**@type** (type) specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **main** (main) main title of the work[Default]

**sub** (subordinate) subtitle of the work

**alt** (alternate) alternative title of the work

**short** (short) abbreviated form of title

**desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

*Member of* model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back docTitle front titlePage

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift

character data

*Example*

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
    AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
    Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
    And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
    Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
    Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
    once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
    Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
    at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
    <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element titlePart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

---

**<trailer>** contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.  
[4.2.4. Content of Textual Divisions 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* textstructure

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next

- \* @prev
- \* @exclude
- \* @select
- att.global.rendition
  - \* @rend
  - \* @style
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* @cert
  - \* @resp
- att.global.source
  - \* @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.typed
  - @type
- att.written
  - @hand

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front group postscript

May contain

core: abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift

character data

Example

```
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

Example

```
<trailer>  
<l>In stead of FINIS this advice <hi>I</hi> send,</l>  
<l>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <lb/>  
<hi>Hamans</hi> END.</l>  
</trailer>
```

From EEBO A87070

Content model

```
<content>  
<alternate minOccurs="0">
```

```

maxOccurs="unbounded">
<textNode/>
<elementRef key="lg"/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.inter"/>
<classRef key="model.lLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

### Schema Declaration

```

element trailer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  (
    text
    | lg      | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.lLike      | model.
  )
}

```

---

**<ul>** (underline) for capturing typographical feature: underlined glyphs.

*Namespace* <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/tite/1.0>

*Module* derived-module-tei\_tite

*Attributes*

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs
    - \* @facs
  - att.global.linking
    - \* @corresp
    - \* @synch
    - \* @sameAs
    - \* @copyOf
    - \* @next
    - \* @prev
    - \* @exclude
    - \* @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - \* @rend
    - \* @style
  - att.global.responsibility

- \* @cert
- \* @resp
- att.global.source
- \* @source

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl date del desc editor email foreign head hi item l  
label name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref resp speaker stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b i smcap sub sup ul

figures: cell formula

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg  
list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

derived-module-tei\_tite: b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

linking: seg

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: handShift  
character data

Content model

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element ul { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

---

**<unclear>** (unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [12.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

- Attributes
- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.change
    - \* @change
  - att.global.facs

- \* *@fac*s
- att.global.linking
  - \* *@corresp*
  - \* *@synch*
  - \* *@sameAs*
  - \* *@copyOf*
  - \* *@next*
  - \* *@prev*
  - \* *@exclude*
  - \* *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - \* *@rend*
  - \* *@style*
- att.global.responsibility
  - \* *@cert*
  - \* *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - \* *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

**@reason** indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

*Suggested values include:* **illegible** (illegible)

**inaudible** (inaudible)

**faded** (faded)

**background\_noise** (background noise)

**eccentric\_ductus** (eccentric ductus) indicates illegibility due to an unusual, awkward, or incompetent execution of a glyph or glyphs

```
<div>
  <head>Rx</head>
  <p>500 mg <unclear reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>
</p>
</div>
```

*Note* One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause.

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl date del editor email foreign head hi item l label lg name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref speaker stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b i smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* cell

*linking:* ab seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add address bibl cb cit date del desc email foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr q ref stage time title unclear

*derived-module-tei\_tite:* b colShift i ornament smcap sub sup ul

*figures:* figure formula table

*gaiji:* g

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* floatingText

*transcr:* handShift  
character data

*Note* The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 22. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility.

The **<damage>**, **<gap>**, **<del>**, **<unclear>** and **<supplied>** elements may be closely allied in use. See section 12.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The *hand* attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 12.3.2.1. Document Hands.

*Example*

```
<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said
... </u>
```

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

*Schema Declaration*

```
element unclear
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.cmc.attributes,
  attribute reason
  {
    list
    {
      (
        "illegible"
        | "inaudible"
        | "faded"
        | "background_noise"
        | "eccentric_ductus"
      )+
    }
  }?,
  macro.paraContent}
}
```

## B.2 Model classes

**model.addrPart** groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses]

*Module* tei

*Used by* address

*Members* model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike  
model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart]] addrLine

---

**model.addressLike** groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.pPart.data

*Members* address email

---

**model.attributable** groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts]

*Module* tei

*Used by* cit macro.phraseSeq model.inter sp

*Members* model.quoteLike[cit] floatingText

---

**model.biblLike** groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

*Module* tei

*Used by* cit listBibl model.inter

*Members* bibl listBibl

---

**model.biblPart** groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl

*Members* model.imprintPart[pubPlace publisher] model.respLike[author editor respStmnt]  
bibl

---

**model.common** groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* argument body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph figure postscript

*Members* model.cmc model.divPart[model.lLike[l] model.pLike[ab p] lg sp]  
model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike[cit] floatingText] model.biblLike[bibl  
listBibl] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list table]  
model.oddDecl model.stageLike[stage] ornament] q

*Note* This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

---

**model.dateLike** groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.pPart.data

*Members* date time

---

**model.descLike** groups elements which contain a description of their function.

*Module* tei

*Used by* gap graphic

*Members* desc

---

**model.div1Like** groups top-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* back body front

*Members* div1

---

**model.div2Like** groups second-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* div1

*Members* div2

---

**model.div3Like** groups third-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* div2

*Members* div3

---

**model.div4Like** groups fourth-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* div3

*Members* div4

---

**model.div5Like** groups fifth-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* div4

*Members* div5

---

**model.div6Like** groups sixth-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* div5

*Members* div6

---

**model.div7Like** groups seventh-level structural divisions.

*Module* tei

*Used by* div6

*Members* div7

---

**model.divBottom** groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* tei

*Used by* body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 figure front group lg list table

*Members* model.divBottomPart[address closer postscript signed trailer]  
model.divWrapper[argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute]

---

**model.divBottomPart** groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* tei

*Used by* back model.divBottom postscript

*Members* address closer postscript signed trailer

---

**model.divPart** groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* macro.specialPara model.common

*Members* model.lLike[l] model.pLike[ab p] lg sp

*Note* Note that this element class does not include members of the `model.inter` class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

---

**model.divTop** groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* tei

*Used by* body div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 group lg list

*Members* model.divTopPart[model.headLike[head] address opener signed]  
model.divWrapper[argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute]

---

**model.divTopPart** groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.divTop postscript

*Members* model.headLike[head] address opener signed

---

**model.divWrapper** groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.divBottom model.divTop

*Members* argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute

---

**model.emphLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

*Members* foreign title

---

**model.frontPart** groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [7.1. Front and Back Matter ]

*Module* tei

*Used by* back front

*Members* model.frontPart.drama listBibl titlePage

---

**model.gLike** groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs.

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl byline closer date dateline docImprint head l macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara model.paraPart opener time trailer

*Members* g

---

**model.global** groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* address argument back bibl body byline cit closer date dateline div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docImprint docTitle epigraph figure floatingText front group head l lg list macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara model.paraPart opener postscript sp table text time titlePage trailer

*Members* model.global.edit[gap] model.global.meta model.milestoneLike[cb colShift lb milestone pb] model.noteLike[note] figure

---

**model.global.edit** groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.global

*Members* gap

---

**model.graphicLike** groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]

*Module* tei

*Used by* cit figure formula model.phrase table

*Members* formula graphic

---

**model.headLike** groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

*Module* tei

*Used by* argument figure listBibl model.divTopPart table

*Members* head

---

**model.hiLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module* tei

*Used by* formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

*Members* b hi i q smcap sub sup ul

---

**model.highlighted** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl model.phrase

*Members* model.emphLike[foreign title] model.hiLike[b hi i q smcap sub sup ul]

---

**model.imprintPart** groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.biblPart

*Members* pubPlace publisher

---

**model.inter** groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* head l macro.limitedContent macro.specialPara model.common model.paraPart trailer

*Members* model.attributable[model.quoteLike[cit] floatingText] model.biblLike[bibl

listBibl] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list table]  
model.oddDecl model.stageLike[stage] ornament

---

**model.lLike** groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

*Module* tei

*Used by* head lg model.divPart model.paraPart sp trailer

*Members* 1

---

**model.labelLike** groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

*Module* tei

*Used by* lg model.inter

*Members* desc label

---

**model.limitedPhrase** groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited

*Members* model.emphLike[foreign title] model.hiLike[b hi i q smcap sub sup ul]  
model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date time]  
model.measureLike[num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name]  
model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart]]]  
model.pPart.editorial[abbr] model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr  
ref]

---

**model.listLike** groups list-like elements. [3.8. Lists]

*Module* tei

*Used by* back model.inter sp

*Members* list table

---

**model.measureLike** groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.pPart.data

*Members* num

---

**model.milestoneLike** groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

*Module* tei

*Used by* listBibl model.global

*Members* cb colShift lb milestone pb

---

---

**model.nameLike** groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.addrPart model.pPart.data

*Members* model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike  
model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart]

*Note* A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

---

**model.nameLike.agent** groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.nameLike respStmt

*Members* name

*Note* This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

---

**model.noteLike** groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.global

*Members* note

---

**model.pLike** groups paragraph-like elements.

*Module* tei

*Used by* back front model.divPart sp

*Members* ab p

---

**model.pLike.front** groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* tei

*Used by* back front

*Members* argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle  
epigraph head titlePart

---

**model.pPart.data** groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

---

*Members* model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date time]  
model.measureLike[num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name]  
model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart]]

---

**model.pPart.edit** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl model.phrase

*Members* model.pPart.editorial[abbr] model.pPart.transcriptional[add del handShift unclear]

---

**model.pPart.editorial** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit

*Members* abbr

---

**model.pPart.transcriptional** groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

*Module* tei

*Used by* lg model.pPart.edit

*Members* add del handShift unclear

---

**model.paraPart** groups elements that may appear in paragraphs and similar elements. [3.1. Paragraphs]

*Module* tei

*Used by* macro.abContent macro.paraContent

*Members* model.gLike[g] model.global[model.global.edit[gap] model.global.meta  
model.milestoneLike[cb colShift lb milestone pb] model.noteLike[note] figure]  
model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike[cit] floatingText] model.biblLike[bibl  
listBibl] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list table]  
model.oddDecl model.stageLike[stage] ornament] model.lLike[l]  
model.phrase[model.graphicLike[formula graphic]  
model.highlighted[model.emphLike[foreign title] model.hiLike[b hi i q smcap sub sup  
ul]] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email]  
model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[num]  
model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike  
model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart]]]  
model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr] model.pPart.transcriptional[add del  
handShift unclear]] model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr ref]  
model.segLike[seg] model.specDescLike] lg

---

**model.phrase** groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* byline closer date dateline docImprint head l macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara model.paraPart opener time trailer

*Members* model.graphicLike[formula graphic] model.highlighted[model.emphLike[foreign title] model.hiLike[b hi i q smcap sub sup ul]] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr] model.pPart.transcriptional[add del handShift unclear]] model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr ref] model.segLike[seg] model.specDescLike

*Note* This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

---

**model.placeStateLike** groups elements which describe changing states of a place.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.nameLike

*Members* model.placeNamePart

---

**model.ptrLike** groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl cit model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

*Members* ptr ref

---

**model.quoteLike** groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.attributable

*Members* cit

---

**model.respLike** groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.biblPart

*Members* author editor respStmt

---

**model.segLike** groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 18.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl model.phrase

*Members* seg

---

*Note* The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

---

**model.stageLike** groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [7.3. Other Types of Performance Text]

*Module* tei

*Used by* lg model.inter sp

*Members* stage

*Note* Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

---

**model.titlepagePart** groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* tei

*Used by* titlePage

*Members* argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph graphic ornament titlePart

### B.3 Attribute classes

---

**att.ascribed.directed** provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

*Module* tei

*Members* q sp stage

*Attributes*

**@toWhom** indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

In the following example from Mary Pix's *The False Friend*, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *toWhom* attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the <stage> includes *toWhom* to indicate the directionality of the action.

```
<castItem type="role">
  <role xml:id="emil">Emilius.</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
  <role xml:id="lov">Lovisa</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
  <role xml:id="serv">A servant</role>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#emil"
  toWhom="#lov">
```

```

    <speaker>Emil.</speaker>
    <l n="1">My love!</l>
  </sp>
  <sp who="#lov"
    toWhom="#emil">
    <speaker>Lov.</speaker>
    <l n="2">I have no Witness of my Noble Birth</l>
    <stage who="emil"
      toWhom="#serv">Pointing to her Woman.</stage>
    <l>But that poor helpless wretch—</l>
  </sp>

```

*Note* To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section 2.4.6. Correspondence Description, rather than a *toWhom* attribute.

---

**att.calendarSystem** provides attributes for indicating calendar systems to which a date belongs. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]

*Module* tei

*Members* date docDate time

*Attributes*

**@calendar** indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@calendar]">

<sch:assert test="string-length( normalize-space(.) ) gt 0">

@calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert>

</sch:rule>

He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date> (<date calendar="#julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 11, 1731/32, 0.S.</date>).

He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian #julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 22, 1732 (Feb. 11, 1731/32, 0.S.)</date>.

*Note* Note that the *calendar* attribute declares the calendar system used to interpret the textual content of an element, as it appears on an original source. It does *not* modify the interpretation of the normalization attributes provided by att.dataable.w3c, att.dataable.iso, or att.dataable.custom. Attributes from those first two classes are always interpreted as Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian dates, as per the respective standards on which they are based. The calendar system used to interpret the last (att.dataable.custom) may be specified with *datingMethod*.

---

**att.cmc** (computer-mediated communication) provides attributes categorizing how the element content was created in a CMC environment.

*Module* tei

*Members* abbr add address argument bibl byline cb closer date dateline del desc  
 docAuthor docDate email epigraph figure floatingText foreign formula gap graphic  
 head hi l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num opener p pb postscript ptr  
 q ref salute seg signed stage table time title trailer unclear

*Attributes*

**@generatedBy** (generated by) categorizes how the content of an element was generated in a CMC environment.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@generatedBy]">  
 <sch:assert test="ancestor-or-self::tei:post">The @generatedBy  
 attribute is for use within a <post> element.</sch:assert>  
 </sch:rule>

*Suggested values include:* **human** the content was naturally typed or spoken by a human user

**template** the content was generated after a human user activated a template for its insertion

**system** the content was generated by the system, i.e. the CMC environment

**bot** the content was generated by a bot, i.e. a non-human agent, typically one that is not part of the CMC environment itself

**unspecified** the content was generated by an unknown or unspecified process

automatic system message in chat: user moves on to another

chatroom <post type="event"

generatedBy="system"

who="#system"

rend="color:blue">

<p>

<name type="nickname"

corresp="#A02">McMike</name> geht

in einen anderen Raum:

<name type="roomname">Kreuzfahrt</name>

</p>

</post>

automatic system message in chat: user enters a chatroom

<post type="event"

generatedBy="system">

<p>

<name type="nickname"

corresp="#A08">c\_bo</name> betritt

den Raum. </p>

</post>

automatic system message in chat: user changes his font

color <post type="event"

generatedBy="system"

rend="color:red">

<p>

<name type="nickname"

corresp="#A08">c\_bo</name> hat die

Farbe gewechselt.

</p>

</post>

An automatic signature of user including an automatic

timestamp (Wikipedia discussion, anonymized). The

specification of *generatedBy* at the inner element <signed>

```

is meant to override the specification at the outer element
<post>. This is generally possible when the outer
generatedBy value is "human". <post type="standard"
  generatedBy="human"
  indentLevel="2"
  synch="#t00394407"
  who="#WU00005582">
  <p> Kurze Nachfrage: Die Hieros für den Goldnamen stammen
    auch von Beckerath gem. Literatur ? Grüße --</p>
  <signed generatedBy="template"
    rend="inline">
    <gap reason="signatureContent"/>
    <time generatedBy="template">18:50, 22. Okt. 2008
(CEST)</time>
  </signed>
</post>
Wikipedia talk page: user signature <post type="written"
  generatedBy="human">
<!-- ... main content of posting ... -->
  <signed generatedBy="template">
    <gap reason="signatureContent"/>
    <time generatedBy="template">12:01, 12. Jun. 2009
(CEST)</time>
  </signed>
</post>

```

---

**att.dateable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or dateable events. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]

*Module* tei

*Members* author date docDate editor name resp time title

*Attributes* • att.dateable.w3c

- @when
- @from
- @to

This superclass provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the `att.dateable.w3c` class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the `att.dateable.iso` and `att.dateable.custom` classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

---

**att.dateable.w3c** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dateable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.dateable[author date docDate editor name resp time title]

*Attributes*

@when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.temporal.w3c

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats. **<p>**

```

<date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
<date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at
3:25 in the morning</date>
<time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8
pm</time>
<time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
<date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
<date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
<date when="--01">the first of the month</date>
<date when="--08">August</date>
<date when="2006">MMVI</date>
<date when="0056">AD 56</date>
<date when="-0056">56 BC</date>

```

**</p>**

This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after

Pentecost, in that year the

```

<date calendar="#julian"
when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>

```

**<opener>**

**<dateline>**

**<placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>**

**<date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>**

**</dateline>**

**<salute>To**

**Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday**

**<time when="12:00:00">noon.</time>**

**</opener>**

**@from** indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g.

yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.temporal.w3c

**@to** indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.temporal.w3c

*Schematron* **<sch:rule context="tei:\*[@when]">**

```

<sch:report test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to" role="nonfatal">The
@when attribute cannot be used with any other att.dateable.w3c
attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

```

*Schematron* **<sch:rule context="tei:\*[@from]">** **<sch:report test="@notBefore"**

```

role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used
together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

```

*Schematron* **<sch:rule context="tei:\*[@to]">** **<sch:report test="@notAfter"**

```

role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used
together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

```

*Example*

```

<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>

```

*Note* The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar.

The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is **yyyy-mm-dd**, but **yyyy**, **--mm**, **---dd**, **yyyy-mm**, or **--mm-dd** may also be used. For the time part, the form **hh:mm:ss** is used.

Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

---

**att.declarable** provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *decls* attribute. [16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]

*Module* tei

*Members* bibl listBibl

*Attributes*

**@default** indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.truthValue

*Legal values are:* **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected

**false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]

The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a *default* attribute with a value of true.

---

**att.docStatus** provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

*Module* tei

*Members* bibl

*Attributes*

**@status** describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **approved**

**candidate**

**cleared**

**deprecated**

**draft** [Default]

**embargoed**

**expired**

**frozen**

**galley**

**proposed**

**published**

**recommendation**  
**submitted**  
**unfinished**  
**withdrawn**

*Example*

```

<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change when="2010-10-21"
    status="published"/>
  <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>
  <change when="2010-08-02"
    status="embargoed"/>
  <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen"
    who="#MSM"/>
  <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft"
    who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>

```

**att.fragmentable** provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

*Module* tei

*Members* 1 p

*Attributes*

**@part** specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect

**N** (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness[Default]

**I** (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element

**M** (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element

**F** (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

*Note* The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

**att.global** provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]

*Module* tei

*Members* abbr add addrLine address argument author b back bibl body byline cb cell closer colShift date dateline del desc div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle editor email epigraph figure floatingText foreign formula front g gap graphic group handShift head hi i item l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num opener ornament p pb postscript ptr pubPlace

publisher q ref resp respStmnt row salute seg signed smcap sp speaker stage sub sup  
table text time title titlePage titlePart trailer ul unclear

*Attributes* • att.global.change

– @change

• att.global.facs

– @facs

• att.global.linking

– @corresp

– @synch

– @sameAs

– @copyOf

– @next

– @prev

– @exclude

– @select

• att.global.rendition

– @rend

– @style

• att.global.responsibility

– @cert

– @resp

• att.global.source

– @source

**@xml:id** (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* ID

*Note* The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.11. Reference Systems.

**@n** (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.text

*Note* The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

**@xml:lang** (language) indicates the language of the element content using a tag generated according to BCP 47.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.language

**<p> ...** The consequences of this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last **<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign>** or chief (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to ancestral territorial organization.**</p>**

*Note* The `xml:lang` value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify `xml:lang` at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the `<teiHeader>` from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.

Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of `xml:lang`.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <https://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php>.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its `ident` attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

`@xml:space` signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable  
**preserve** indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

*Note* The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle `xml:space` correctly.

---

**att.global.change** provides attributes allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.

*Module* transcr

*Members* att.global[abbr add addrLine address argument author b back bibl body byline cb cell closer colShift date dateline del desc div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle editor email epigraph figure floatingText foreign formula front g gap graphic group handShift head hi i item l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num opener ornament p pb postscript ptr pubPlace publisher q ref resp respStmnt row salute seg signed smcap sp speaker stage sub sup table text time title titlePage titlePart trailer ul unclear]

*Attributes*

`@change` points to one or more `<change>` elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

---

**att.global.facs** provides attributes used to express correspondence between an element and all or part of a facsimile image or surface. [12.1. Digital Facsimiles]

*Module* transcr

*Members* att.global[abbr add addrLine address argument author b back bibl body byline cb cell closer colShift date dateline del desc div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle editor email epigraph figure floatingText foreign formula front g gap graphic group handShift head hi i item l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num opener ornament p pb postscript ptr pubPlace publisher q ref resp respStmnt row salute seg signed smcap sp speaker stage sub sup table text time title titlePage titlePart trailer ul unclear]

*Attributes*

**@facs** (facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

---

**att.global.linking** provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [17. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]

*Module* linking

*Members* att.global[abbr add addrLine address argument author b back bibl body byline cb cell closer colShift date dateline del desc div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle editor email epigraph figure floatingText foreign formula front g gap graphic group handShift head hi i item l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num opener ornament p pb postscript ptr pubPlace publisher q ref resp respStmnt row salute seg signed smcap sp speaker stage sub sup table text time title titlePage titlePart trailer ul unclear]

*Attributes*

**@corresp** (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<group>
  <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
        xml:lang="mi">
    <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
      <div type="chapter">
        <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki,
i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
  <text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
        xml:lang="en">
    <body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"
          corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1">
      <div type="chapter">
```

```

    <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and
Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
    <p>...</p>
  </div>
</body>
</text>
</group>In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each
containing the same document in a different language. The
correspondence is indicated using corresp. The language is
indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the
tag with the corresp and the tag pointed to by the corresp
inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```

```

<!-- In a placeography called "places.xml"
--><place xml:id="LOND1"
  corresp="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1">
  <placeName>London</placeName>
  <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"
  corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1">
  <persName type="lit">London</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Allegorical character representing the city of
<placeName ref="places.xml#LOND1">London</placeName>.</p>
  </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"
  corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2">
  <persName type="lit">London's Genius</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Personification of London's genius. Appears as an
allegorical character in mayoral shows.
    </p>
  </note>
</person>In this example, a <place> element containing
information about the city of London is linked with two
<person> elements in a literary personography. This
correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship
than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in
which an allegorical character could be substituted for the
physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a
correspondence between them.

```

**@synch** (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**@sameAs** points to an element that is the same as the current element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.pointer

**@copyOf** points to an element of which the current element is a copy.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.pointer

*Note* Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.

**@next** (next) points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.pointer

*Note* It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

**@prev** (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.pointer

*Note* It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

**@exclude** points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**@select** selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

*Note* This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

---

**att.global.rendition** provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.global[abbr add addrLine address argument author b back bibl body byline cb cell closer colShift date dateline del desc div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle editor email epigraph figure floatingText foreign formula front g gap graphic group handShift head hi i item l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num opener ornament p pb postscript ptr pubPlace publisher q ref resp respStmt row salute seg signed smcap sp speaker stage sub sup table text time title titlePage titlePart trailer ul unclear]

*Attributes*

**@rend** (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

```
<head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle,
  <lb/>On Her <lb/>
  <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

*Note* These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially

useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *rend* attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

**@style** contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.text

```
<head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps;">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
  Her
  <lb/>
  <hi style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

*Note* Unlike the attribute values of *rend*, which uses whitespace as a separator, the *style* attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.

The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the `<styleDefDecl>` element in the TEI header.

If *style* and *rendition* are both present on an element, then *style* overrides or complements *rendition*. *style* should not be used in conjunction with *rend*, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language.

These guidelines provide no semantic basis or suggested precedence when both *rend* and *rendition* are provided. For this reason simultaneous use of both is not recommended for interchange unless documentation explaining the use is provided, probably in an ODD customization.

---

**att.global.responsibility** provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 12.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 18.3. Spans and Interpretations 14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.global[abbr add addrLine address argument author b back bibl body byline cb cell closer colShift date dateline del desc div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle editor email epigraph figure floatingText foreign formula front g gap graphic group handShift head hi i item l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num opener ornament p pb postscript ptr pubPlace publisher q ref resp respStnt row salute seg signed smcap sp speaker stage sub sup table text time title titlePage titlePart trailer ul unclear]

*Attributes*

**@cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.probCert

**@resp** (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

*Note* To reduce the ambiguity of a *resp* pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that *resp* be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

*Example*

```
Blessed are the
<choice>
  <sic>cheesemakers</sic>
  <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr>
</choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.
```

*Example*

```
<!-- in the <text> ... --><lg>
<!-- ... -->
  <l>Punkes, Panders, bafe extortionizing
    sla<choice>
      <sic>n</sic>
      <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr>
    </choice>es,</l>
<!-- ... -->
</lg>
<!-- in the <teiHeader> ... -->
<!-- ... -->
<respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber">
  <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp>
  <name>Janelle Jenstad</name>
</respStmt>
```

---

**att.global.source** provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source.

[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.global[abbr add addrLine address argument author b back bibl body byline cb cell closer colShift date dateline del desc div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle editor email epigraph figure floatingText foreign formula front g gap graphic group handShift head hi i item l label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num opener ornament p pb postscript ptr pubPlace publisher q ref resp respStmt row salute seg signed smcap sp speaker stage sub sup table text time title titlePage titlePart trailer ul unclear]

*Attributes*

@source specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@source]">  
 <sch:let name="srcs" value="tokenize(  
 normalize-space(@source),' ')" /> <sch:report test="(

```

self::tei:classRef | self::tei:dataRef | self::tei:elementRef |
self::tei:macroRef | self::tei:moduleRef | self::tei:schemaSpec ) and
$srcs[2]"> When used on a schema description element (like
<sch:value-of select="name(.)"/>), the @source attribute should
have only 1 value. (This one has
<sch:value-of select="count($srcs)"/>.) </sch:report>
</sch:rule>

```

*Note* The *source* attribute points to an external source. When used on an element describing a schema component (`<classRef>`, `<dataRef>`, `<elementRef>`, `<macroRef>`, `<moduleRef>`, or `<schemaSpec>`), it identifies the source from which declarations for the components should be obtained.

On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, a private scheme URI of the form `tei:x.y.z`, where `x.y.z` indicates the version number, e.g. `tei:4.3.2` for TEI P5 release 4.3.2 or (as a special case) `tei:current` for whatever is the latest release, or a private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a `<prefixDef>`.

When used on elements describing schema components, *source* should have only one value; when used on other elements multiple values are permitted.

#### Example

```

<p>
<!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>)
tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a problematic and
should be a contested
    term.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>

```

#### Example

```

<p>
<!-- ... -->
    <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the
more we learn, the
    less we seem to know.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<!-- ... -->
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
    <title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,
<edition>15th edition</edition>. <pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>;
<publisher>University of
    Chicago Press</publisher> (<date>2003</date>),
<biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>.

</bibl>

```

#### Example

```
<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/>
```

Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.

*Example*

```
<schemaSpec ident="myODD"
  source="mycompiledODD.xml">
<!-- further declarations specifying the components required -->
</schemaSpec>
```

Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml.

---

**att.milestoneUnit** provides attributes to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

*Module* core

*Members* milestone

*Attributes*

**@unit** provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **page** physical page beginnings (synonymous with the <pb> element).

**column** column beginnings.

**line** line beginnings (synonymous with the <lb> element).

**book** any units termed book, liber, etc.

**poem** individual poems in a collection.

**canto** cantos or other major sections of a poem.

**speaker** changes of speaker or narrator.

**stanza** stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

**act** acts within a play.

**scene** scenes within a play or act.

**section** sections of any kind.

**absent** passages not present in the reference edition.

**unnumbered** passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

```
<milestone n="23"
  ed="La"
  unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24"
  ed="AV"
  unit="verse"/> ...
```

*Note* If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of *unit*. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <milestone> tag for the edition in question is encountered.

In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the unit boundary in any respect other than simply identifying the type of unit, for example as word-breaking or not.

---

**att.notated** provides attributes to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.

*Module* tei

*Members* formula seg

*Attributes*

**@notation** names the notation used for the content of the element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

---

**att.personal** (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [14.2.1. Personal Names]

*Module* tei

*Members* name

*Attributes*

**@full** indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **yes** (yes) the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]

**abb** (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.

**init** (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

**@sort** (sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.count

---

**att.pointing** provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

*Module* tei

*Members* note ptr ref

*Attributes*

**@targetLang** specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *target*, using a language tag generated according to BCP 47.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.language

*Schematron*

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]">
  <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on
  <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
  <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"
    target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
    type="tuv"
    targetLang="pl"/>
  <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"
    target="sw/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
    type="tuv"
    targetLang="sw"/>
</linkGrp>
```

In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

*Note* The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their ( IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

**@target** specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

*Note* One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:\*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]">  
 <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if  
 @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

---

**att.resourced** provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

*Module* tei

*Members* graphic

*Attributes*

**@url** (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* teidata.pointer

---

**att.sortable** provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [10.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]

*Module* tei

*Members* bibl item list listBibl

*Attributes*

**@sortKey** supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.word

David's other principal backer, Josiah  
 ha-Kohen **<index indexName="NAMES">**  
**<term sortKey="Azarya\_Josiah\_Kohen">**Josiah ha-Kohen b.  
 Azarya**</term>**  
**</index>** b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was  
 David's own first  
 cousin.

*Note* The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent

Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under fourh, and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under maccoy, while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order alphabetized between a- and AA. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

---

**att.tableDecoration** provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table. [15. Tables, Formulæ, Graphics, and Notated Music]

*Module* figures

*Members* cell row

*Attributes*

**@role** (role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **label** labelling or descriptive information only.

**data** data values.[Default]

*Note* When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the *role* attribute of the parent **<row>** element.

**@rows** (rows) indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.count

*Default* 1

*Note* A value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several rows. Where several cells span multiple rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

**@cols** (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.count

*Default* 1

*Note* A value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns. Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

---

**att.timed** provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5. Temporal Information]

*Module* tei

*Members* gap

*Attributes*

**@start** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.pointer

*Note* If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.

**@end** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.pointer

*Note* If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

---

**att.transcriptional** provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [12.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

*Module* tei

*Members* add del

*Attributes* • att.written

– @hand

**@status** indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an

addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

**duplicate-partial** part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

**excessStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

**excessEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

**shortStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**shortEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**partial** some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**unremarkable** the deletion is not faulty.[Default]

*Note* Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.

Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

**@cause** documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

**@seq** (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.count

---

**att.typed** provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 18.1.1. Words and Above 3.6.1. Referring Strings 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.6. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 14.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 17.1.1. Pointers and Links 17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 13.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 23.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]

*Module* tei

*Members* abbr add address bibl cb date del desc div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 figure floatingText g graphic group head label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num pb ptr ref seg table text time title titlePage titlePart trailer

*Attributes*

**@type** characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

```
<div type="verse">
  <head>Night in Tarras</head>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
</div>
```

*Note* The *type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of *att.typed*, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

*Schematron* `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>`

*Note* When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used.

Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the `<valList>` element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 24.3.1.3.

Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .

**att.written** provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

*Module* tei

*Members* att.transcriptional[add del] closer dateline figure head hi label note opener p postscript salute seg signed sp speaker stage text trailer

*Attributes*

**@hand** points to a `<handNote>` element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.pointer

### B.4 Macros

---

**macro.abContent** (anonymous block content) defines the content of anonymous block elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* ab

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.paraPart"/>
    <elementRef key="ab"/>
  </alternate>
```

```
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
macro.abContent = ( text | model.paraPart | ab )*
```

---

**macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei*Used by* desc*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*
```

---

**macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei*Used by* add b del docEdition hi i p ref salute seg signed smcap sub sup title titlePart ul unclear*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.paraPart"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Declaration* `macro.paraContent = ( text | model.paraPart )*`

---

**macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

*Module* tei*Used by* abbr addrLine author docAuthor docDate editor email foreign label name num pubPlace publisher speaker

### *Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

### *Declaration*

```
macro.phraseSeq =
  ( text | model.gLike | model.attributable | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

---

**macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

*Module* tei

*Used by* resp

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

### *Declaration*

```
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```

---

**macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* cell item note q stage

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

```

<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.inter"/>
<classRef key="model.divPart"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

*Declaration*

```

macro.specialPara =
(
  text
  | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.divPart      | model.global

```

## B.5 Datatypes

**teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

*Module* tei

*Used by* teidata.probCert

*Content model*

```

<content>
<valList type="closed">
  <valItem ident="high"/>
  <valItem ident="medium"/>
  <valItem ident="low"/>
  <valItem ident="unknown"/>
</valList>
</content>

```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"
```

*Note* Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

**teidata.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- colShift/@cols
- table/@rows
- table/@cols

*Content model*

```

<content>
  <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/>
</content>

```

*Declaration* `teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

*Note* Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

---

**teidata.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats.

*Module* `tei`

*Used by*

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRTWYZ/:\- ]+/">
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRTWYZ/:\- ]+" }
```

*Example*

```
<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>
```

*Example*

```
<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>
```

*Example*

```
<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>
```

*Example*

```
<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

*Note* A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first time number-letter pair. For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

---

**teidata.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

*Module* `tei`

*Used by*

*Content model* `<content> <dataRef name="duration"/></content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration`

*Example*

```
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
```

*Example*

```
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

*Example*

```
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
```

*Example*

```
<time dur="PT0.025">20 ms</time>
```

*Note* A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first time number-letter pair.

For complete details, see the W3C specification.

---

**teidata.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- address/@type
- address/@role
- desc/@type
- gap/@reason
- list/@type
- num/@type
- q/@type
- title/@type
- title/@level
- titlePage/@type
- titlePart/@type
- unclear/@reason

*Content model* `<content> <dataRef key="teidata.word"/></content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.enumerated = teidata.word`

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a `<valList>` element.

**teidata.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="language"/>
    <valList>
      <valItem ident=""/>
    </valList>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Declaration* `teidata.language = xsd:language | ( " " )`

*Note* The values for this attribute are language tags as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.

A language tag, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

**language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

**script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <https://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

**region** Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at <https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.

**variant** An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.

**extension** An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. There are currently only two extensions in use.

Extension **T** indicates that the content was transformed. For example en-t-it could be used for content in English that was translated from Italian.

Extension **T** is described in the informational RFC 6497. Extension **U** can be used to embed a variety of locale attributes. It is described in the informational RFC 6067.

**private use** An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with **x-**) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding **<language>** element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been grandfathered from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with **x-**, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding **<language>** element in the TEI header.

Examples include

**sn** Shona

**zh-TW** Taiwanese

**zh-Hant-HK** Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

**en-SL** English as spoken in Sierra Leone

**pl** Polish

**es-MX** Spanish as spoken in Mexico

**es-419** Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

---

**teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="double"/>
    <dataRef name="token"
      restriction="(\-?[\d]+\-?[\d]+)"/>
    <dataRef name="decimal"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.numeric =
  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

*Note* Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.

To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, E notation, a variant of exponential notation, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.

A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

---

**teidata.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\-+]?d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|vmin|vmax)"/>
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.outputMeasurement =
  token
  {
    pattern = "[\-+]?d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|vmin|vmax) "
```

*Example*

```
<figure>
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters
<mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in
  between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath,
  all on a white
  background.</figDesc>
  <graphic height="600px" width="600px"
    url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/>
</figure>
```

*Note* These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

---

**teidata.point** defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)" />
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.point = token { pattern = "(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)" }
```

*Example*

```
<facsimile>
  <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280">
    <zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234">
      <graphic url="handwriting.png"/>
    </zone>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

*Note* A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers. Neither number can end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not.

---

**teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- handShift/@new

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <dataRef restriction="\S+" name="anyURI" />
</content>
```

*Declaration* `teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" }`

*Note* The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs) mapping to URIs*. For example, <https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%> is encoded as <https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25> while <http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/> is encoded as <http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/>

---

**teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>
    <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.probCert = teidata.probability | teidata.certainty
```

---

**teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

*Module* tei

*Used by* teidata.probCert

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="double">
    <dataFacet name="minInclusive" value="0"/>
    <dataFacet name="maxInclusive" value="1"/>
  </dataRef>
</content>
```

*Declaration* `teidata.probability = xsd:double`

*Note* Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

---

**teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="date"/>
    <dataRef name="gYear"/>
    <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
    <dataRef name="gDay"/>
    <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
    <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
    <dataRef name="time"/>
    <dataRef name="dateTime"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.temporal.w3c =
  xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
```

*Note* If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

---

**teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model* `<content> <dataRef name="string"/></content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.text = string`

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single token in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

---

**teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model* `<content> <dataRef name="boolean"/></content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean`

*Note* The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.

This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype:

teidata.xTruthValue.

---

**teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\\d]+[a-z]*[\\d]*(\\. [\\d]+[a-z]*[\\d]*){0,3}"/>
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.versionNumber =  
  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
```

---

**teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

*Module* tei

*Used by* teidata.enumeratedElement:

- colShift/@ed

*Content model*

```
<content>  
  <dataRef name="token"  
    restriction="^[^p{C}\p{Z}]+"/>  
</content>
```

*Declaration* `teidata.word = token { pattern = "^[^p{C}\p{Z}]+"` }

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

---

**teidata.xmlName** defines attribute values which contain an XML name.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model* `<content> <dataRef name="NCName"/></content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.xmlName = xsd:NCName`

*Note* The rules defining an XML name form a part of the XML Specification.

---

**teidata.xpath** defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model* `<content> <textNode/></content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.xpath = text`

*Note* Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in 6.2..

When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.

## C Acknowledgments

The TEI Tite is simply a synthesis of work done at the

- University of Michigan Digital Library Production Service,
- University of Virginia Digital Library Production Service,
- and the California Digital Library

---

and represented in their documents

- *Minimum standards for text capture,*
- *Text Encoding Guidelines for Keyboarding Vendors,*
- and *CDL TEI Base Encoding Guidelines,*

respectively. Many thanks to the institutions and individuals responsible for sharing their experience and expertise for the benefit of the TEI community at large.

Also, thank you to members of the TEI Special Interest Group on Libraries who provided very valuable corrections and suggestions.